

Dedication:

To Yehowah, the God of all undeserved kindness and truth.

Theme Scripture:

Blessed be Yehowah the God of Israel, because he has turned his attention and performed deliverance toward his people. And he has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of David his servant, just as he, through the mouth of his holy prophets from of old, has spoken of a salvation from our enemies, and from the hand of all those hating us.

To perform the mercy in connection with our forefathers and to call to mind his holy covenant, the oath that he swore to Abraham our forefather, to grant us, after we have been rescued from the hands of enemies, the privilege of fearlessly rendering sacred service to him with loyalty and righteousness before him all our days. ([Luke 1:68-75](#))

13 Volumes
3404 Pages
26,165 Study Questions
927 Footnotes
4,429 Bible Verses
22,466 Paragraphs

Copyright © 2009 All Rights Reserved By Jerome Cameron Goodwin

All scripture quotations are taken from the New World Translation of the Holy Scriptures which is Copyright 1984 By the Watchtower Bible And Tract Society of New York and Pennsylvania

Introduction To The Life And Teachings of Jesus Christ

1• What answer would we get, if we asked people, who was the greatest man who ever lived? Many people, depending on who they themselves are, would mention great leaders like Alexander the Great, Napoleon, Caesar, or Abraham Lincoln, who were all great world leaders.

[Question] If asked who the greatest man who ever lived was, what would many people answer?

[Question] What would you answer?

2• Others would select great humanitarians, like Albert Schweitzer, or men of science like Isaac Newton or Albert Einstein. Still others would select creative individuals like Mozart or Beethoven, Michelangelo. Others would select philosophers like Plato or Aristotle. There have in fact been many thousands of fine men who stood out in human history for their accomplishments in many fields.

[Question] How would some others answer, depending upon their experience, and how they think?

3• Yet the person who would be mentioned the most frequently is a unique individual who did more to change the world of his day, and continues to affect men more today, than any other man that ever lived.

[Question] What though, can we say about the person whom the majority of people would select?

[Question] How did this man affect the world of his day, and today?

4• He was born from a long line of kings on both sides of his earthly family, yet he was raised in humble surroundings by poor parents. He was part of a large family, and he lived only for 33 ½ years before dying a painful and unjustified death. His real work toward the human family lasted for only 3 ½ years, and during that short time he accomplished the starting up of a worldwide organization that continues till today, some two thousand years later.

[Question] What kind of surroundings did this man come forth from?

[Question] How long did his work in behalf of mankind last, and yet what did he accomplish during that short time?

5• He never wrote a book or composed a poem or wrote a symphony. He did not lead his nation to war and conquer others through warfare, and he did not even lead the religious leaders of his own day in his own nation. He was a humble man, who possessed little materially, dying with only the clothes he wore on his back. He never held a job, owned a home, or raised a family.

[Question] What things, that other famous men did, did he not do?

[Question] Was Jesus wealthy?

6• He did not discover some great scientific truth, he did not make a lot of money, or acquire power over many people. His philosophy was a simple one to love his God, and his fellow man. He never even wrote down what he said, he left that for others to do, and this they have done. Yet despite all these things, this man proved to be far and away the greatest man who ever lived. That man is Jesus Christ!

[Question] What other things that famous men had done, did Jesus not do?

[Question] Yet who must we say was the greatest man who ever lived on earth?

7• Men today write books extolling the achievements of great men and their biographies are everywhere. Many, study these writings, thinking, that by understanding those who did so well in life, that they too can benefit from their experience. There is certainly much merit in this methodology.

[Question] What kinds of books are very prolific today, and why do men like to read them?

8• People today laud the achievements of artistic and creative individuals. They follow like lemmings men who take the lead, and who stand against the status quo. Yet if we were to carefully examine any one of these great men, we would see many flaws of personality and character within each and every one of them. Yet that is not the case with Jesus Christ. His life course is laid out for us in four separate and quite different biographies, called the gospels, that of Matthew, Mark, Luke and John.

[Question] How have most people always treated artistic and creative people among them?

[Question] What would a careful examination of any of those great men reveal about all of them?

[Question] Yet how is Jesus presented in the four separate biographies of his life available today?

9• In fact no man's life is so carefully and truthfully documented in writing, and none has been so carefully examined in the minutest of detail. Jesus Christ set an example of fine living, and of love for his creator, Yehowah God. He loved his fellow man and cared about all people. He was a well rounded person of extraordinary wisdom and knowledge, yet he never attended school.

[Question] How carefully has the life of Jesus Christ been examined today by mankind?

[Question] What are some of the qualifications he demonstrated every day of his life, for being called the greatest men that ever lived?

10• Many today try to say that he was not a real person, but just a myth from the past, yet no person's life is as carefully documented as his life, and his achievements are attested to by thousands of eye witnesses. Also his coming to the earth as a man, was foretold thousands of years ahead of time, and then right on time, he came forth, as the savior of mankind.

[Question] What have many today, and in the past, tried to say about him, because they refuse to believe what he did?

[Question] However is his life work well attested to?

11• There are hundreds of Messianic prophecies that tell about his life course that were written far before he came to the earth. They tell of his sufferings, his place of birth, his lineage, his fine works and his love for his God. They mark well, the man Jesus Christ, for no other man came forth before or since, who fulfilled all of these many prophecies. About this one the Apostle Paul wrote;

[Question] What things were written about his life, and the course it would take, even hundreds of years before he ever was born?

[Question] What do these many prophecies reveal for us today about the man Jesus Christ?

12• Indeed, the sacred secret of this godly devotion is admittedly great. He was made manifest in flesh, was declared righteous in spirit, appeared to angels, was preached about among nations, was believed upon in the world, was received up in glory. (1 Timothy 3:16)

[Question] How did the Apostle Paul write about his life course and works?

13• Jesus Christ was sent forth to a particular people, the Jews, for the Jews had been the covenant people of Yehowah God for

over a thousand years when he came forth to them. He ministered to them primarily, with a few exceptions, and yet his message appeals to men everywhere and in all ages and times.

[Question] Who was Jesus Christ primarily sent forth to, yet whom does his message appeal to?

14• He spoke in illustrations and parables, so that thinking people would be the only ones who could understand his teachings. He came forth, not to destroy the way of the Jewish nation, but to fulfill all of God's promises which had been made for centuries toward this favored nation. He spoke the truth, even as he stated when before Pilate.

[Question] How did he primarily express himself to others, and what did this draw out in people?

[Question] What was his purpose in respect to his own people, the Jews?

15• Do not think I came to destroy the Law or the Prophets. I came, not to destroy, but to fulfill. (**Matthew 5:17**)

[Question] How did his work relate to the things that had come before, through the Jewish nation?

16• Therefore Pilate said to him; Well, then, are you a king? Jesus answered; You yourself are saying that I am a king. **For this I have been born, and for this I have come into the world, that I should bear witness to the truth.** Everyone that is on the side of the truth listens to my voice. (**John 18:37**)

[Question] What was the primary focus of all his teachings?

17• Though he was a fine man who always spoke truth, he had many opposers, both among the government of Israel and within its religious bodies. He even stated, that his coming forth would cause division within families and peoples, and that men would have to love him more than family or friends, to be worthy of him.

[Question] What kind of a man was Jesus Christ, and yet how did the world of his day treat him?

[Question] What did he himself say that his teachings would cause among mankind?

18• Do not think I came to put peace upon the earth. I came to put, not peace, but a sword. (**Matthew 10:34**)

[Question] What did he say that his teachings would bring to the earth?

19• For I came to cause division, with a man against his father,

and a daughter against her mother, and a young wife against her mother-in-law. (**Matthew 10:35**)

[Question] How would his teachings cause division?

20•• Indeed, a man's enemies will be persons of his own household. (**Matthew 10:36**)

[Question] Where then, would a man's enemies be found?

21• And whoever does **not accept his torture stake and follow after me, is not worthy of me.** (**Matthew 10:38**)

[Question] What must his disciples be willing to carry, to follow after him successfully?

22• One of the things that is taught by him and by his apostles, is that his life course serves as a fine model of living for mankind, and that his example should be followed closely by all men. Thus his counsel to **keep doing this in remembrance of him.** Those words were spoken on the night before his sacrificial death to a chosen few of his closest disciples, yet they apply down through time to many others, who loved him, and wanted to follow closely in his footsteps.

[Question] What did he and his apostles teach about his life course?

[Question] What counsel did he then give his disciples on the night he left them, as to what they should continue to do?

[Question] Who does this fine counsel also apply to, and how should we apply it?

23• Do his words apply only to the celebration of the Memorial of his death, with its symbolic emblems? Certainly not! Would it really honor Jesus Christ to celebrate the Memorial of his death, and not to follow in his footsteps. No, but keeping remembrance of him, involves far more than symbolic acts of worship. Jesus Christ was a man of action and conviction, and Christians must be too.

[Question] What do Jesus words apply to, and why do we say this?

[Question] What does doing things in remembrance of him entail?

24• Just before leaving the earth after his resurrection, he gave counsel to his anointed Christian followers, as to just how, they should carry on in his absence.

[Question] What fine counsel did Jesus give to his followers just before leaving them, as to how they should carry on in his absence?

25• Go therefore and make disciples of people of all the nations,

baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit. (**Matthew 28:19**)

[Question] What work were they then to do?

- 26· Teaching them to **observe all the things I have commanded you**. And, look! I am with you all the days until the conclusion of the system of things. (**Matthew 28:20**)

[Question] What things were they to teach others who became disciples?

[Question] Who promised to remain with all those who did thus?

- 27· Later his apostles showed the way by giving fine counsel to imitate his clean way of worship, and thus gain everlasting life in heaven.

[Question] What other fine works does the Bible record point to, that give an even clearer example of how this should be accomplished?

- 28· He that says he remains in union with him is under obligation himself also to go on walking, just as that one walked. (**1 John 2:6**)

[Question] What obligation does the person take on, who becomes a disciple of Jesus Christ?

- 29· Remain in **union** with me, and I in **union** with you. Just as the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, unless it **remains** in the vine, in the same way neither can you, unless you remain in **union** with me. (**John 15:4**)

[Question] How did Jesus Christ illustrate, how Christian fruitfulness comes forth?

[Question] What then, must anointed Christians produce, to remain in union with God and Christ?

- 30· For I set the pattern for you, that, **just** as I did to you, you should do also. (**John 13:15**)

[Question] What did the life course of Jesus Christ set for all that would follow?

- 31· In fact, to this course you were called, because even Christ suffered for you, **leaving you a model for you to follow his steps closely**. (**1 Peter 2:21**)

[Question] What did convey by his own fine example set for all men to follow after?

- 32· But if Christ is in **union** with you, the body indeed is dead on account of sin, but the spirit is life, on account of

righteousness. (**Romans 8:10**)

[Question] What is the situation of the fleshly body, if one is in union with Christ, and of the spirit?

33• What course did Jesus Christ take in life, and how today can men copy his fine example, and apply what he taught in their own lives? That is a question that has been poorly answered by many, who have made some limited attempts to copy his fine example. Others have really gotten the sense of his fine teachings.

[Question] What question must all who want to become his disciples take to heart among themselves?

[Question] How must we say that this question has been answered in the past by most nominal Christians?

34• The organization we see today, that first came forth from his preaching efforts in the **First Century C.E.**, has been corrupted and segmented into many opposing sects, just as he said it would come to be, and so it cannot be relied upon to give correct instruction as to how to serve God and copy Christ's example closely. One will have to go directly to the Bible record, and do the work of studying his life course, and then make application of what he learns to accomplish this.

[Question] What has today happened to the organization he first started in the **First Century C.E.**, just as he said it would be?

[Question] So then, where does one have to go directly to, to gain accurate knowledge of the proper course to take today?

35• This is a course bringing many fine blessings from Yehowah God and his Christ, for they are looking for men who love them, in this generation, as in all other generations coming before it. True worship always involves truth, and that truth is always to be found within the Bible record.

[Question] What things will any who choose to follow in this course receive, and from whom?

[Question] What does true worship always involve, and where alone do we find religious truth?

36• Nevertheless, the hour is coming, and it is now, when the true worshipers **will worship the Father with spirit and truth**, for, indeed, the Father **is looking for suchlike ones** to worship him. (**John 4:23**)

[Question] What hour did Jesus Christ say, was then near?

[Question] How then, would people worship the Father, for what does the Father want from people who seek to worship him?

37· God is a Spirit, and those worshiping him **must worship with spirit and truth. (John 4:24)**

[Question] How must people who want to worship the God of the Bible, conduct their worship?

38· And you will know the truth, and **the truth will set you free. (John 8:32)**

[Question] What did Jesus Christ state, that his followers would certainly know, and how would it affect them?

39· The **substance of your word is truth, and every righteous judicial decision of yours is to time indefinite. (Psalms 119:160)**

[Question] What is the substance of the Bible, the Holy Scriptures?

40· Sanctify them by means of the truth. **Your word is truth. (John 17:17)**

[Question] What cleanses people for true worship, that is acceptable and holy and clean before their God Yehowah?

[Question] Where do we find this truth about God?

41· Do you as an individual, care enough about everlasting life, to get the facts, and to really come to know what Jesus Christ taught? It is imperative to know Yehowah and his Christ, for everlasting life proceeds forth from them, and only through an accurate knowledge of them.

[Question] What should every man woman and child who wants to serve Yehowah God want to understand?

[Question] Why is it imperative to really get to know Yehowah God and his Messiah, Jesus Christ?

42· This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ. (John 17:3)

[Question] What then, comes forth from our accurate knowledge of them?

43· This book has been prepared to help you to get to know Christ, through his teachings and his example. It is prepared as a commentary on each verse of the four gospel accounts, and a careful study of it, will teach you all you need to know to properly imitate this wonderful man, who was himself, a perfect imitator of his heavenly father, Yehowah God.

[Question] Why was this book prepared, and how is it organized?

[Question] Whose wonderful example will it teach you time imitate closely?

44· What really made Jesus Christ the greatest man who ever lived? He possessed everlasting life, and he has authority to give this life to others who do God's will. Through this gift he healed men and women, controlled demons and resurrected others to life. There was in fact nothing he could not do. I invite you to closely study this man and then to put into practice what you learn from his life course. It is a most rewarding endeavor.

[Question] What distinguished the greatest man who ever lived from all the other contenders for greatness?

[Question] How did Jesus Christ use this powerful and wonderful gift toward mankind?

[Question] What invitation is now being opened to you the reader of this book?

43· By means of him was life, and the life was the light of men. (John 1:4)

[Question] What comes to mankind through Jesus Christ, and what is this life towards mankind?

Matthew

Matthew Chapter 1

Matthew 1:1 The book of the history¹ of Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham.

Footnote: Matthew B(Greek), Math-thai'on; D(Greek), Mat-thai'on; derived from the Hebrew proper name Mat-tith-yah', meaning Gift of Yah

Footnote: Or, line of descent; origin Greek, *ge-ne'se-os*, genesis; Latin, *ge-ne-ra-ti-o'nis*, generation; J^{17, 18}(Hebrew), *toh-ledhoth'*, genealogy See (Genesis 2:4) and (Genesis 5:1) Footnotes, History

1 The Bible record is a history of the Israelite nation of which Jesus Christ was a member by birth. Matthew here shows Jesus Christ's genealogy, through Abraham and through King David, and down through to the Christ.

[Question] Whose history does the Bible document, and what nation was Jesus Christ born to?

[Question] How does the opening book Matthew delineate Jesus' lineage within this nation?

2 This is the book of Adam's history. In the day of God's creating Adam he made him in the likeness of God. **(Genesis 5:1)**

[Question] How far back in human history does the recorded lineage of Jesus Christ go back to?

3 And it must occur that when your days have come to the full for you to go to be with your forefathers, I shall certainly raise up your seed after you, that will come to be one of your sons, and I shall indeed firmly establish his kingship. **(1 Chronicles 17:11)**

[Question] What promise was made to king David about one of his ancestors who would come forth after him?

4 As Jesus was passing along from there, two blind men followed him, crying out and saying; Have mercy on us, Son of David. **(Matthew 9:27)**

[Question] Who was Jesus Christ readily recognized to be the ancestor or son of?

5 This one will be great and will be called Son of the Most High. Yehowah God will give him the throne of David his father. **(Luke 1:32)**

[Question] What promise did Yehowah God make towards this fine son, and what would he give to him?

- 6• And by means of your seed all nations of the earth will certainly bless themselves due to the fact that you have listened to my voice. (**Genesis 22:18**)

[Question] What was Abraham told about this coming seed, and who might gain a blessing through him?

- 7• In place of your forefathers there will come to be your sons, whom you will appoint as princes in all the earth. (**Psalms 45:16**)

[Question] What was promised through Yehowah God for this line, starting with faithful King David?

Matthew 1:2•• Abraham became father to¹ Isaac. Isaac became father to Jacob. Jacob became father to Judah and his brothers.

Footnote: Literally, generated Greek, *e-gen'ne-sen*; Latin, *ge'nu-it*, begat

- 1• Matthew begins his ancestry by tracing it from the father of all those having faith, Abraham. Later he breaks it out to the lineage of Judah, from whom all the kings of ancient Israel came forth.

[Question] How does Matthew trace the ancestry of Jesus Christ, and later through what kingly line?

- 2• Accordingly Abraham called the name of his son who had been born to him, whom Sarah had borne to him, **Isaac**. (**Genesis 21:3**)

[Question] Who was the firstborn son of Abraham, according to the promise?

- 3• The sons of Abraham were **Isaac** and Ishmael. (**1 Chronicles 1:28**)

[Question] What were the names of Abraham's two children, and which one was born first?

- 4• Son of **Jacob**, son of **Isaac**, son of Abraham, son of Terah, son of Nahor. (**Luke 3:34**)

[Question] What lineage led to Jacob?

- 5• And after that his brother came out and his hand was holding onto the heel of Esau. So he called his name **Jacob**. And **Isaac** was sixty years old at her giving them birth. (**Genesis 25:26**)

[Question] Who were the two sons of Isaac, and which one was born first?

- 6• And Abraham came to be **father** to **Isaac**. The sons of **Isaac** were Esau and Israel. (**1 Chronicles 1:34**)

[Question] What grandsons came to be born to Abraham through Isaac?

- 7• And she **became** pregnant once more and brought a son to birth and then said; This time I shall laud Yehowah. She therefore called his name **Judah**. After that she left off giving birth. (**Genesis 29:35**)

[Question] Who was the mother of Judah, and why did she call him Judah?

- 8• To this God said; Sarah your wife is indeed bearing you a son, and you must call his name **Isaac**. And I will establish my covenant with him for a covenant to time indefinite to his seed after him. (**Genesis 17:19**)

[Question] What name was Abraham told to name his promised seed, and what would God establish with him?

- 9• And this is the history of **Isaac** the son of Abraham. Abraham **became father** to **Isaac**. (**Genesis 25:19**)

[Question] What history in Genesis documents the lineage of Abraham and Isaac?

- 10• Of the sons of **Judah**, their births according to their families in the house of their **fathers** by the number of names, from twenty years old upward, everyone going out to the army. (**Numbers 1:26**)

[Question] How did the Israelites keep track of all birth records, by tribe?

Matthew 1:3• Judah became father to Perez and to Zerah by Tamar. Perez became father to Hezron. Hezron became father to Ram.

- 1• Later Judah's first two sons proved to be unacceptable as carriers of the Messianic seed, and so Yehowah God put them to death. It was therefore the third son through Tamar who became the inheritor of the promises, Perez, who later fathered Hezron and who then fathered Ram.

[Question] What was the early lineage of Judah, and why did this come through Tamar?

- 2• Finally it developed that as soon as he drew back his hand, why, here his brother came out, so that she exclaimed; What do you mean by this, that you have produced a perineal rupture for yourself? Hence his name was called Perez. (**Genesis 38:29**)

[Question] Why was the twin Perez, named such?

- 3• And Tamar his daughter-in-law it was that bore to him Perez and Zerah. All the sons of Judah were five. (**1 Chronicles 2:4**)

[Question] How many sons then, did Judah come to have?

- 4• Now these are the generations of Perez. Perez became father to Hezron. (**Ruth 4:18**)

[Question] Who were the sons of Perez?

- 5• Son of Amminadab, son of Arni, son of Hezron, son of Perez, son of Judah. (**Luke 3:33**)

[Question] What further men came forth through the line of Perez, Judah's son?

- 6• And the sons of Hezron that were born to him were Jerahmeel and Ram and Chelubai. (**1 Chronicles 2:9**)

[Question] Who were the offspring of Hezron, the son of Perez?

- 7• In time Judah took a wife for Er his firstborn, and her name was Tamar. (**Genesis 38:6**)

[Question] What happened to the first husband of Tamar, Judah's son?

- 8• And afterward his brother upon whose hand the scarlet piece was, came out, and his name came to be called Zerah. (**Genesis 38:30**)

[Question] How did the midwife keep track of the first son of Tamar, when she had twins?

- 9• And the sons of Judah came to be, by their families. Of Shelah the family of the Shelanites. Of Perez the family of the Perezites. of Zerah the family of the Zerahites. (**Numbers 26:20**)

[Question] What were the families of Judah that came forth from him?

- 10• And may your house become like the house of Perez, whom Tamar bore to Judah, from the offspring that Yehowah will give you out of this young woman. (**Ruth 4:12**)

[Question] What blessing was put upon Ruth and her offspring?

- 11• And Hezron became father to Ram, and Ram became father to Amminadab. (Ruth 4:19)**

[Question] What sons came from Judah's line through Hezron?

- 12• At this all the men of Judah answered the men of Israel; Because the king is closely related to us, and why is it that you have become angry over this thing? Have we eaten at all at the king's expense, or has a gift been carried to us? (2 Samuel 19:42)**

[Question] How did the men of Judah try to place themselves ahead of their brothers of other tribes in David's day?

- 13• And after the death of Hezron in Caleb-ephrahtah, with Abijah being the wife of Hezron, she then bore him Ashhur the father of Tekoa. (1 Chronicles 2:24)**

[Question] What son came forth from Hezron?

- 14• The sons of Judah were Perez, Hezron and Carmi and Hur and Shobal. (1 Chronicles 4:1)**

[Question] Who were the five sons of Judah?

- 15• Also, in Jerusalem there dwelt some of the sons of Judah and some of the sons of Benjamin. Of the sons of Judah there were Athaiah the son of Uzziah the son of Zechariah the son of Amariah the son of Shephatiah the son of Mahalalel of the sons of Perez. (Nehemiah 11:4)**

[Question] What family line was also represented in Jerusalem in Nehemiah's day?

- 16• For it is quite plain that our Lord has sprung up out of Judah, a tribe about which Moses spoke nothing concerning priests. (Hebrews 7:14)**

[Question] What tribe did Jesus Christ come forth from?

Matthew 1:4•• Ram became father to Amminadab. Amminadab became father to Nahshon. Nahshon became father to Salmon.

- 1• Matthew then traces this lineage down through several generations from Ram to Salmon.**

[Question] How does Matthew then trace Jesus' lineage, down through what line?

- 2• And those camping eastward toward the sunrising will be the**

three-tribe division of the camp of Judah in their armies, and the chieftain for the sons of Judah is Nahshon the son of Amminadab. (Numbers 2:3)

[Question] Where within the arrangement of ancient Israel, did the tribe of Judah camp?

- 3• And Amminadab became father to Nahshon, and Nahshon became father to Salmon. (Ruth 4:20)**

[Question] Who were the offspring of Amminadab?

- 4• As for Ram, he became father to Amminadab. Amminadab, in turn, became father to Nahshon the chieftain of the sons of Judah. (1 Chronicles 2:10)**

[Question] Who were the offspring of Ram?

- 5• Son of Jesse, son of Obed, son of Boaz, son of Salmon, son of Nahshon. (Luke 3:32)**

[Question] Who were the offspring of Salmon?

- 6• Nahshon, in turn, became father to Salma. Salma, in turn, became father to Boaz. (1 Chronicles 2:11)**

[Question] Who were the offspring of Nahshon?

- 7• Now Aaron took Elisheba, Amminadab's daughter, the sister of Nahshon, as his wife. Later she bore him Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar. (Exodus 6:23)**

[Question] How was the family lines of the priesthood and the kingship joined in a marriage at the time of Aaron?

- 8• Now the one presenting his offering on the first day proved to be Nahshon the son of Amminadab of the tribe of Judah. (Numbers 7:12)**

[Question] Whose son was Nahshon?

Matthew 1:5• Salmon became father to Boaz by Rahab. Boaz became father to Obed by Ruth. Obed became father to Jesse.

- 1• Later the son of Salmon became Boaz who married the Moabitess Ruth, for whom the Bible book is named. Their son was named Obed, who later became the father of Jesse, King David's father.**

[Question] How did the line of Salmon later lead to king David?

- 2• Then Joshua the son of Nun sent two men out secretly from**

Shittim as spies, saying; Go, take a look at the land and Jericho. So they went and came to the house of a prostitute woman whose name was Rahab, and they took up lodging there. (Joshua 2:1)

[Question] How did the Canaanitess Rahab become part of the lineage leading to the Messiah?

- 3· Accordingly Boaz took Ruth, and she became his wife, and he had relations with her. So Yehowah granted her conception and she bore a son. (Ruth 4:13)**

[Question] How did Boaz and Ruth figure in this lineage?

- 4· Boaz, in turn, became father to Obed. Obed, in turn, became father to Jesse. (1 Chronicles 2:12)**

[Question] Who was Jesse's grandfather?

- 5· And the city must become a thing devoted to destruction, it, with everything that is in it, belongs to Yehowah. Only Rahab the prostitute may keep on living, she and all who are with her in the house, because she hid the messengers whom we sent out. (Joshua 6:17)**

[Question] What happened to all those within Jericho, except for Rahab, and why was she preserved alive?

- 6· And Rahab the prostitute and the household of her father and all who belonged to her, Joshua preserved alive. She dwells in the midst of Israel down to this day, because she hid the messengers whom Joshua sent out to spy on Jericho. (Joshua 6:25)**

[Question] Whom also did Rahab save by her faith, and why was she preserved alive?

- 7· Later the men took wives for themselves, Moabite women. The name of the one was Orpah, and the name of the other Ruth. And they went on dwelling there for about ten years. (Ruth 1:4)**

[Question] How did Ruth come to be the wife of Boaz through repurchase, though a Moabite woman?

- 8· Now Naomi had a kinsman of her husband, a man mighty in wealth, of the family of Elimelech, and his name was Boaz. (Ruth 2:1)**

[Question] Who was one of the repurchasers of Naomi, Ruth's mother-in-law?

- 9• May Yehowah reward the way you act, and may there come to be a perfect wage for you from Yehowah, the God of Israel, under whose wings you have come to seek refuge. (Ruth 2:12)

[Question] What blessing was given to Ruth for her fine behavior within Israel?

- 10• Then the neighbor ladies gave it a name, saying; A son has been born to Naomi. And they began to call his name Obed. He is the father of Jesse, David's father. (Ruth 4:17)

[Question] What was the firstborn of Ruth and Boaz named?

- 11• Nahshon, in turn, became father to Salma. Salma, in turn, became father to Boaz. (1 Chronicles 2:11)

[Question] Who was the grandfather of Boaz?

- 12• Son of Jesse, son of Obed, son of Boaz, son of Salmon, son of Nahshon. (Luke 3:32)

[Question] What line of men came through Nahshon?

Matthew 1:6• Jesse became father to David the king. David became father to Solomon by the wife of Uriah.¹

Footnote: Or, by her who had belonged to Uriah

- 1• Jesse's son David was chosen by Yehowah God to become the second king of Israel, and later his family line was established permanently as the family line that would continue to rule forever in Israel. David himself bore a son, Solomon, through Bathsheba, who later came to rule over all Israel and who brought spectacular peace and prosperity too Israel, under God's guidance.

[Question] Who was later chosen by Yehowah God to become the second king within Israel, and what was later promised to his family line?

[Question] What later ruler came forth from King David through Bathsheba?

- 2• Then the neighbor ladies gave it a name, saying; A son has been born to Naomi. And they began to call his name Obed. He is the father of Jesse, David's father. (Ruth 4:17)

[Question] What was the firstborn son of Ruth called?

3· Ozem the sixth, David the seventh. (1 Chronicles 2:15)

[Question] Who was David the seventh son of?

4· Thirty years old was David when he became king. For forty years he ruled as king. (2 Samuel 5:4)

[Question] How old was David when he became king of Israel, and for how long did he rule?

5· And David began to comfort Bath-sheba his wife. Further, he came in to her and lay down with her. In time she bore a son, and his name came to be called Solomon. And Yehowah himself did love him. (2 Samuel 12:24)

[Question] What later ruler of Israel came forth from the marriage of David to Bathsheba?

6· And there were these born to him in Jerusalem, Shimea and Shobab and Nathan and Solomon, four of Bath-sheba the daughter of Ammiel. (1 Chronicles 3:5)

[Question] Who were the four sons that were born to David from Bathsheba?

7· And Obed became father to Jesse. Jesse became father to David. (Ruth 4:22)

[Question] Who was the grandfather of King David?

8· Saul now said to him; Whose son are you, boy? To which David said; The son of your servant Jesse the Bethlehemite. (1 Samuel 17:58)

[Question] Whose son was David?

9· Son of Jesse, son of Obed, son of Boaz, son of Salmon, son of Nahshon. (Luke 3:32)

[Question] What line of men led up to King David?

10· And these are the last words of David; The utterance of David the son of Jesse, and the utterance of the able-bodied man that was raised up on high, the anointed of the God of Jacob, and the pleasant one of the melodies of Israel. (2 Samuel 23:1)

[Question] What did King David later come to be known for?

11· And these are the names of the children that became his in Jerusalem, Shammua and Shobab, Nathan and Solomon. (1 Chronicles 14:4)

[Question] Who were the four children of David through Bathsheba?

- 12• You have loved righteousness and you hate wickedness. That is why God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of exultation more than your partners. (**Psalms 45:7**)

[Question] What prophecy did David utter, regarding one of his illustrious ancestors, who later came to be Jesus Christ?

- 13• And there must go forth a twig out of the stump of Jesse, and out of his roots a sprout will be fruitful. (**Isaiah 11:1**)

[Question] What prophecy did Isaiah utter concerning Jesse and his righteous sprout?

- 14• Son of Melea, son of Menna, son of Mattatha, son of Nathan, son of **David**. (**Luke 3:31**)

[Question] Whose genealogy, did Luke trace Jesus' ancestry through?

Matthew 1:7•• Solomon became father to Rehoboam. Rehoboam became father to Abijah. Abijah became father to Asa.

- 1• Thus began the royal lineage of David's house, beginning with Solomon, through his son Rehoboam, and later the kings Abijah and Asa, who ruled over Judah after the Kingdom split between Israel and Judah at the end of Solomon's rulership.

[Question] What kings within Israel then came forth through Solomon?

- 2• Then Solomon lay down with his forefathers, and was buried in the City of David his **father**, and **Rehoboam** his son began to reign in place of him. (**1 Kings 11:43**)

[Question] Who succeeded Solomon to the throne of Israel?

- 3• And the son of Solomon was **Rehoboam**, **Abijah** his son, **Asa** his son, Jehoshaphat his son. (**1 Chronicles 3:10**)

[Question] Who were the ancestors of Solomon in his kingly line?

- 4• Finally **Abijah** lay down with his forefathers, and they buried him in the City of David. **Asa** his son began to reign in place of him. In his days the land had no disturbance for ten years. (**2 Chronicles 14:1**)

[Question] Who succeeded Abijah to the throne of Israel?

- 5• Finally **Rehoboam** lay down with his forefathers and was buried with his forefathers in the City of David. And his mother's name was Naamah the Ammonitess. And Abijam

his son began to reign in place of him. (1 Kings 14:31)

[Question] Who succeeded Rehoboam to the throne of Israel?

- 6• Finally Abijam lay down with his forefathers and they buried him in the City of David. Asa his son began to reign in place of him. (1 Kings 15:8)

[Question] Who succeeded Abijam or Abijah to the throne of Israel?

- 7• And there were these born to him in Jerusalem, Shimea and Shobab and Nathan and Solomon, four of Bath-sheba the daughter of Ammiel. (1 Chronicles 3:5)

[Question] Who were the four sons of David through Bathsheba?

- 8• Finally Solomon lay down with his forefathers. So they buried him in the City of David his father. Rehoboam his son began to reign in place of him. (2 Chronicles 9:31)

[Question] Who succeeded Solomon to the throne of Israel?

- 9• Finally Rehoboam lay down with his forefathers and was buried in the City of David. Abijah his son began to reign in place of him. (2 Chronicles 12:16)

[Question] Who succeeded Rehoboam to the throne of Israel?

Matthew 1:8• Asa became father to Jehoshaphat. Jehoshaphat became father to Jehoram. Jehoram became father to¹ Uzziah.

Footnote: WH omits Ahaziah, Jehoash, Amaziah But see (1 Chronicles 3:11,12)

- 1• Thus now follows a listing of the kings of Judah who ruled each one in succession throughout Judah's long history. This history is well documented in the books of First and Second Kings, and First and Second Chronicles, within the Bible record.

[Question] How then, did the kingly line progress after Asa?

[Question] Where is this history well documented for us today?

- 2• Finally Asa lay down with his forefathers and was buried with his forefathers in the City of David his forefather. Jehoshaphat his son began to reign in place of him. (1 Kings 15:24)

[Question] Who succeeded Jehoshaphat to the kingship in Israel?

- 3• Jehoram his son, Ahaziah his son, Jehoash his son. (1 Chronicles 3:11)

[Question] Who succeeded Jehoshaphat, and who also followed him as king of Israel?

- 4• Finally **Jehoshaphat** lay down with his forefathers and was buried with his forefathers in the City of David. **Jehoram** his son began to reign in place of him. (**2 Chronicles 21:1**)

[Question] Who succeeded Jehoshaphat as king of Israel?

- 5• As for **Jehoshaphat** the son of Asa, he had become king over Judah in the fourth year of Ahab the king of Israel. (**1 Kings 22:41**)

[Question] Who ruled over the ten tribe Kingdom of Israel, while Jehoshaphat was king of Judah?

- 6• Then all the people of Judah took Azariah, he at the time being sixteen years old, and they made him king in place of his **father** Amaziah. (**2 Kings 14:21**)

[Question] Who succeeded Amaziah to the throne, and how old was he then?

- 7• As for Shallum the son of Jabesh, he **became** king in the thirty-ninth year of **Uzziah** the king of Judah, and he continued to reign for a full lunar month in Samaria. (**2 Kings 15:13**)

[Question] Who followed Uzziah to rule within Israel?

- 8• Amaziah his son, Azariah his son, Jotham his son. (**1 Chronicles 3:12**)

[Question] Who then succeeded Amaziah to rule within Israel?

- 9• Then all the people of Judah took **Uzziah**, he being sixteen years old, and they made him king in place of his **father** Amaziah. (**2 Chronicles 26:1**)

[Question] Who succeeded Amaziah to rule within Israel?

Matthew 1:9•• Uzziah became father to Jotham. Jotham became father to Ahaz. Ahaz became father to Hezekiah.

- 1• Later kings in this kingly line included Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz and faithful king Hezekiah during the days of Isaiah the prophet.

[Question] What later kings of Israel came forth through Uzziah?

- 2• In the second year of Pekah the son of Remaliah the king of Israel, **Jotham** the son of Uzziah the king of Judah **became** king. (**2 Kings 15:32**)

[Question] Who rules Israel directly after Uzziah?

- 3• Finally **Jotham** lay down with his forefathers and was buried with his forefathers in the City of David his forefather. **Ahaz** his son began to reign in place of him. (2 Kings 15:38)

[Question] Who succeeded Jotham to the kingship within Israel?

- 4• And it came about in the third year of Hoshea the son of Elah the king of Israel that **Hezekiah** the son of **Ahaz** the king of Judah **became** king. (2 Kings 18:1)

[Question] Who succeeded Ahaz to the kingship within Israel?

- 5• **Ahaz** his son, **Hezekiah** his son, Manasseh his son. (1 Chronicles 3:13)

[Question] Who succeeded Ahaz, and then Hezekiah?

- 6• In the seventeenth year of Pekah the son of Remaliah, **Ahaz** the son of **Jotham** the king of Judah **became** king. (2 Kings 16:1)

[Question] Who succeeded Jotham as king of Israel, and when?

- 7• Finally **Ahaz** lay down with his forefathers and was buried with his forefathers in the City of David. **Hezekiah** his son began to reign in place of him. (2 Kings 16:20)

[Question] Who succeeded Ahaz as the king of Israel?

- 8• Twenty-five years old was **Jotham** when he began to reign, and for sixteen years he reigned in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Jerushah the daughter of Zadok. (2 Chronicles 27:1)

[Question] Who did Jotham succeed as king within Israel?

- 9• Twenty years old was **Ahaz** when he began to reign, and for sixteen years he reigned in Jerusalem, and he did not do what was right in Yehowah's eyes like David his forefather. (2 Chronicles 28:1)

[Question] What kind of rule did Ahaz execute, and for how long?

- 10• The vision of Isaiah the son of Amoz that he visioned concerning Judah and Jerusalem in the days of Uzziah, **Jotham**, **Ahaz** and **Hezekiah**, kings of Judah. (Isaiah 1:1)

[Question] What well known prophet lived contemporaneously with what king of Israel?

Matthew 1:10· Hezekiah became father to Manasseh. Manasseh became father to Amon. Amon became father to Josiah.

1· Though Hezekiah was a faithful man, his son Manasseh proved to be one of the worst kings of Israel's long history, bringing a judgment from Yehowah God against the Kingdom of Judah itself. After him this kingly line went downhill spiritually until Josiah came forth.

[Question] What kind of a king did Manasseh come to be within Israel, though the son of a fine man, Hezekiah?

2· Finally Hezekiah lay down with his forefathers. **Manasseh** his son began to reign in place of him. (2 Kings 20:21)

[Question] Who succeeded Hezekiah to rule within Israel?

3· Finally **Manasseh** lay down with his forefathers and was buried in the garden of his house, in the garden of Uzza. **Amon** his son began to reign in place of him. (2 Kings 21:18)

[Question] Who succeeded Manasseh to the kingship within Israel?

4· Finally **Manasseh** lay down with his forefathers, and they buried him at his house. **Amon** his son began to reign in place of him. (2 Chronicles 33:20)

[Question] Who succeeded Manasseh to rule within Israel?

5· But the people of the land struck down all the conspirators against King **Amon**. Then the people of the land made **Josiah** his son king in place of him. (2 Kings 21:24)

[Question] Who came to rule within Israel after Amon?

6· **Amon** his son, **Josiah** his son. (1 Chronicles 3:14)

[Question] Who did the people make king after overthrowing Amon?

7· Twelve years old was **Manasseh** when he began to reign, and for fifty-five years he reigned in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Hephzibah. (2 Kings 21:1)

[Question] How long did Manasseh rule within Israel, and how old was he when he started ruling?

8· Twenty-two years old was **Amon** when he began to reign, and for two years he reigned in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Meshullemeth the daughter of Haruz from Jotbah. (2 Kings 21:19)

[Question] How long did Amon rule within Israel, and how old was he then?

- 9· As for the rest of the affairs of **Amon**, what he did, are they not written in the book of the affairs of the days of the kings of Judah? (**2 Kings 21:25**)

[Question] Where are the affairs of all these kings written down for us today?

- 10· Ahaz his son, Hezekiah his son, **Manasseh** his son. (**1 Chronicles 3:13**)

[Question] Who was the grandson of Ahaz?

- 11· Hezekiah himself **became** king at the age of twenty-five years, and for twenty-nine years he reigned in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Abijah, the daughter of Zechariah. (**2 Chronicles 29:1**)

[Question] How old was Hezekiah when he began to rule Israel, and for how long did he rule?

- 12· And Hezekiah the king proceeded to get up early and gather the princes of the city together, and go up to the house of Yehowah. (**2 Chronicles 29:20**)

[Question] What did Hezekiah lead the people in during his reign?

- 13· Twelve years old was **Manasseh** when he began to reign, and for fifty-five years he reigned in Jerusalem. (**2 Chronicles 33:1**)

[Question] How old was Manasseh when he began to rule, and for how long did he rule Israel?

- 14· Twenty-two years old was **Amon** when he began to reign, and for two years he reigned in Jerusalem. (**2 Chronicles 33:21**)

[Question] How old was Amon when he began to rule, and for how long did he rule Israel?

- 15· Eight years old was **Josiah** when he began to reign, and for thirty-one years he reigned in Jerusalem. (**2 Chronicles 34:1**)

[Question] How old was Josiah when he began to rule, and for how long did he rule?

- 16· The glory of God is the keeping of a matter secret, and the glory of kings is the searching through a matter. (**Proverbs 25:2**)

[Question] What is the glory of God found in?

[Question] What is the glory of kings found in?

Matthew 1:11 Josiah became father to Jeconiah and to his brothers at the time of the deportation to Babylon.¹

Footnote: Greek, *Ba-by-lo'nos*; J^{17, 22}(Hebrew), *Ba-vel'* See (2 Kings 17:24)
Footnote

1 Later Josiah became father to Jeconiah at the time of the deportation to Babylon of Yehowah God's people and the end of the kingship of Judah.

[Question] Who did Josiah father, and at what time within Israel's history?

2 Furthermore, Pharaoh Nechoh made Eliakim the son of Josiah king in place of Josiah his father and changed his name to Jehoiakim, and Jehoahaz he took and then brought to Egypt, where he eventually died. (2 Kings 23:34)

[Question] Who then came to interfere with the kings in David's family line?

3 And the sons of Josiah were the firstborn Johanan, the second, Jehoiakim, the third, Zedekiah, the fourth, Shallum. (1 Chronicles 3:15)

[Question] Who then, were the sons of Josiah?

4 And the sons of Jehoiakim were Jeconiah his son, Zedekiah his son. (1 Chronicles 3:16)

[Question] Who were the sons of Jehoiakim?

5 And Jeconiah the son of Jehoiakim, the king of Judah, and all the exiles of Judah who have come to Babylon I am bringing back to this place, is the utterance of Yehowah, for I shall break the yoke of the king of Babylon. (Jeremiah 28:4)

[Question] Who was Jeconiah the son of?

6 Thus he took Jehoiachin into exile to Babylon, and the king's mother and the king's wives and his court officials and the foremost men of the land he led away as exiled people from Jerusalem to Babylon. (2 Kings 24:15)

[Question] Which king was taken into exile by the Babylonians?

7 And at the return of the year King Nebuchadnezzar sent and

proceeded to bring him to Babylon with desirable articles of the house of Yehowah. Further, he made Zedekiah his father's brother king over Judah and Jerusalem. (**2 Chronicles 36:10**)

[Question] Who was made king by Nebuchadnezzar when Jehoiachin was taken into exile?

- 8• That Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon had not taken when he carried Jeconiah the son of Jehoiakim, the king of Judah, into exile from Jerusalem to Babylon, together with all the nobles of Judah and Jerusalem. (**Jeremiah 27:20**)

[Question] Who also accompanied Jeconiah in the first exile?

- 9• After Jeconiah the king and the lady and the court officials, the princes of Judah and Jerusalem, and the craftsmen and the builders of bulwarks had gone forth from Jerusalem. (**Jeremiah 29:2**)

[Question] Who accompanied Jeconiah in the first deportation to Babylon?

- 10• Eighteen years old was Jehoiachin when he began to reign, and for three months he reigned in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Nehushta the daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem. (**2 Kings 24:8**)

[Question] How old was Jehoiachin when he began to reign, and for how long did he reign in Jerusalem?

- 11• And it came about in the thirty-seventh year of the exile of Jehoiachin the king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month, that Evil-merodach the king of Babylon, in the year of his becoming king, raised up the head of Jehoiachin the king of Judah out of the house of detention. (**2 Kings 25:27**)

[Question] How long then, did Jehoiachin remain in prison in Babylon?

- 12• Who had been taken into exile from Jerusalem with the deported people who were taken into exile with Jeconiah the king of Judah whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon took into exile. (**Esther 2:6**)

[Question] Who was the king within Israel when Babylon took them into exile?

- 13• As I am alive, is the utterance of Yehowah, even if Coniah the son of Jehoiakim, the king of Judah, happened to be the seal ring on my right hand, from there I would pull you

off! (Jeremiah 22:24)

[Question] What did Yehowah God state about Coniah?

- 14· At length it came about in the thirty-seventh year of the exile of Jehoiachin the king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the twenty-fifth day of the month, that Evil-merodach the king of Babylon, in the year of his becoming king, raised up the head of Jehoiachin the king of Judah and proceeded to bring him forth from the prison house. (Jeremiah 52:31)**

[Question] How long did Jehoiachin serve in prison in Babylon before his release?

Matthew 1:12· After the deportation to Babylon Jeconiah became father to Shealtiel. Shealtiel became father to Zerubbabel.

- 1· Then after seventy years of being exiles in ancient Babylon, Shealtiel was Jeconiah's son, and he became father to Zerubbabel who was the first governor of Judah after their repatriation to their homeland.**

[Question] What two ancestors did Jeconiah become father to while in Babylon, and how did they later serve?

- 2· And the sons of Jeconiah as prisoner were Shealtiel his son. (1 Chronicles 3:17)**

[Question] Who was the father of Shealtiel?

- 3· Son of Joanan, son of Rhesa, son of Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, son of Neri. (Luke 3:27)**

[Question] What then, was the lineage of Shealtiel?

- 4· And the sons of Pedaiah were Zerubbabel and Shimei. And the sons of Zerubbabel were Meshullam and Hananiah, and Shelomith was their sister. (1 Chronicles 3:19)**

[Question] What men then came forth from Pedaiah?

- 5· And Jeshua the son of Jehozadak and his brothers the priests and Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel and his brothers proceeded to rise up and build the altar of the God of Israel, to offer up burnt sacrifices upon it, according to what is written in the Law of Moses the man of the true God. (Ezra 3:2)**

[Question] What work did Zerubbabel take part in after the repatriation?

- 6• And these were the priests and the Levites that went up with Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel and Jeshua; Seraiah, Jeremiah, Ezra. (**Nehemiah 12:1**)

[Question] Who were among the priests that served along with Zerubbabel?

- 7• Son of Joanan, son of Rhesa, son of Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, son of Neri. (**Luke 3:27**)

[Question] What was the lineage through Neri?

- 8• And Malchiram and Pedaiah and Shenazzar, Jekamiah, Hoshama and Nedabiah. (**1 Chronicles 3:18**)

[Question] What was the lineage through Malchiram?

- 9• Eighteen years old was Jehoiachin when he began to reign, and for three months and ten days he reigned in Jerusalem. He continued to do what was bad in Yehowah's eyes. (**2 Chronicles 36:9**)

[Question] How old was Jehoiachin when he began to reign, and for how long did he reign?

- 10• Those who came with Zerubbabel, Jeshua, Nehemiah, Seraiah, Reelaiah, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispar, Bigvai, Rehum, Baanah. The number of the men of the people of Israel. (**Ezra 2:2**)

[Question] Who were some of the men who accompanied Zerubbabel back to the Promised Land?

- 11• And in the second year of their coming to the house of the true God at Jerusalem, in the second month, Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel and Jeshua the son of Jehozadak and the rest of their brothers, the priests and the Levites, and all those who had come out of the captivity to Jerusalem started. They now put in positions, the Levites from twenty years of age upward, to act as supervisors over the work of the house of Yehowah. (**Ezra 3:8**)

[Question] What was one of the first things the Israelites started to do upon arriving within the Promised Land?

- 12• It was then that Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel and Jeshua the son of Jehozadak got up and started to rebuild the house of God, which was in Jerusalem, and with them

there were God's prophets giving them aid. ([Ezra 5:2](#))

[Question] What work did the repatriated Israelites then start to do?

- 13• Those who came in with Zerubbabel, Jeshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, Baanah. The number of the men of the people of Israel. ([Nehemiah 7:7](#))

[Question] Who were among the men who accompanied Zerubbabel back to the Promised Land?

- 14• Those who came in with Zerubbabel, Jeshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, Baanah. The number of the men of the people of Israel. ([Nehemiah 7:7](#))

[Question] Who were among the men who accompanied Zerubbabel back to the Promised Land?

- 15• In the second year of Darius the king, in the sixth month, on the first day of the month, the word of Yehowah occurred by means of Haggai the prophet to Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, the governor of Judah, and to Joshua the son of Jehozadak the High Priest, saying; ([Haggai 1:1](#))

[Question] What office did Zerubbabel hold within Israel after the deportation?

- 16• In that day, is the utterance of Yehowah of armies, I shall take you, O Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, my servant, is the utterance of Yehowah. I shall certainly set you as a seal ring, because you are the one whom I have chosen, is the utterance of Yehowah of armies. ([Haggai 2:23](#))

[Question] How then, was Zerubbabel chosen by Yehowah God to rule over his people?

Matthew 1:13• Zerubbabel became father to Abiud. Abiud became father to Eliakim. Eliakim became father to Azor.

- 1• This lineage then continued down through Zerubbabel to Abiud, to Eliakim, and Azor. The lineage from here on, is not found anywhere else within the Bible record.

[Question] How then, did the lineage progress from Zerubbabel?

Matthew 1:14• Azor became father to Zadok. Zadok became father to Achim. Achim became father to Eliud.

1• Later after their return to the Promised Land, Azor fathered Zadok, and then came forth from him Achim and later from him Elihud.

[Question] How then, did the lineage leading to the Messiah go forth through Azor?

Matthew 1:15• Eliud became father to Eleazar. Eleazar became father to Matthan. Matthan became father to Jacob.

1• Later came others who continued to lead to the Messiah. Elihud became father to Eleazar, who then fathered Matthan who later fathered Jacob.

[Question] How then, did the lineage progress through Elihud?

Matthew 1:16• Jacob became father to Joseph the husband of Mary, of whom Jesus was born, who is called Christ.

1• Jacob then became father to Joseph, who later married Mary and to whom the Messiah was born, Jesus Christ. Jesus though born without an earthly father, came to later have four brothers and several sisters according to the Bible record.

[Question] How then, did the lineage progress after Jacob?

[Question] How many brothers and sisters did Jesus Christ come to have?

2• Is this not the carpenter's son? Is not his mother called Mary, and his brothers James and Joseph and Simon and Judas? (Matthew 13:55)

[Question] What did those not putting faith in Jesus comment about his family?

3• This is the carpenter the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joseph and Judas and Simon, is it not? And his sisters are here with us, are they not? So they began to stumble at him. (Mark 6:3)

[Question] What were the names of Jesus' four brothers?

[Question] Did Jesus also have more than one sister, though they are not individually named within the Bible record?

4• Hence when they were gathered together Pilate said to them; Which one do you want me to release to you, Barabbas, or Jesus the so-called Christ? (Matthew 27:17)

[Question] What did Jesus come to be known as within Israel by his peers?

- 5• **May Yehowah reward the way you act, and may there come to be a perfect wage for you from Yehowah the God of Israel, under whose wings you have come to seek refuge. ([Ruth 2:12](#))**

[Question] What was prophesied about Ruth and her seed?

- 6• **Of course, Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judea, to David's city, which is called Bethlehem, because of his being a member of the house and family of David. ([Luke 2:4](#))**

[Question] Where was Jesus Christ actually born, though his father lived in Nazareth of Galilee?

- 7• **Furthermore, Jesus himself, when he commenced his work, was about thirty years old, being the son, as the opinion was, of Joseph, son of Heli. ([Luke 3:23](#))**

[Question] How old was Jesus Christ when he commenced his work among the people of Israel, and whose son was he?

- 8• **Philip found Nathanael and said to him; We have found the one of whom Moses, in the Law, and the Prophets wrote, Jesus, the son of Joseph, from Nazareth. ([John 1:45](#))**

[Question] What were Jesus' early disciples looking diligently for, and so what news did Phillip bring to Nathanael?

Matthew 1:17••

All the generations, then, from Abraham until David were fourteen generations, and from David until the deportation to Babylon fourteen generations, and from the deportation to Babylon until the Christ fourteen generations.

- 1• **Thus Matthew breaks this genealogy down to three sections each of fourteen generations, though this seems to have no scriptural meaningfulness. These break from Abraham to David, from David to the deportation, and from the deportation to the Christ.**

[Question] How does Matthew break up the 42 generations leading up to the Messiah during the history of Israel from Abraham to Jesus?

- 2• **To whom the forefathers belong and from whom the Christ sprang according to the flesh. God, who is over all, be blessed forever. Amen. ([Romans 9:5](#))**

[Question] Whose family line then, did Jesus Christ spring from within Israel?

- 3• Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his seed. It says, not. And to seeds, as in the case of many such, but as in the case of one. And to your seed, who is Christ. (Galatians 3:16)**

[Question] What promises were made to Abraham and to his seed?

Matthew 1:18• But the birth of Jesus Christ was in this way. During the time his mother Mary was promised in marriage to Joseph, she was found to be pregnant by Holy Spirit before they were united.

- 1• In ancient Israel it was the custom for an engaged couple to be viewed as married for a time before they were actually united. During this time they lived apart and prepared for their upcoming marriage. It was during this time, that Mary was found to be pregnant after an angel of Yehowah God visited her, and told her she was to have a son, who would later become the Messiah.**

[Question] How were engaged couples viewed within ancient Israel, even though they did not live together during their engagement period?

[Question] What happened to Jesus' mother Mary during this time?

- 2• To a virgin promised in marriage to a man named Joseph of David's house, and the name of the virgin was Mary. (Luke 1:27)**

[Question] What was Mary's condition when she became pregnant, and whose house or lineage did she also spring forth from?

- 3• In answer the angel said to her; Holy Spirit will come upon you, and power of the Most High will overshadow you. For that reason also, what is born will be called holy, God's Son. (Luke 1:35)**

[Question] What did the angel tell Mary about the son that was to be born to her through Holy Spirit?

- 4• In case there happened to be a virgin girl engaged to a man, and a man actually found her in the city and lay down with her. (Deuteronomy 22:23)**

[Question] How was a woman engaged to a man to be treated, if she became pregnant before marriage?

- 5• But after these days Elizabeth his wife became pregnant, and she kept herself secluded for five months, saying; (Luke 1:24)**

[Question] What relative of Jesus family also came to be pregnant about this time?

- 6• To get registered with Mary, who had been given him in marriage as promised, at present, heavy with child. (Luke 2:5)**

[Question] Where did Joseph go to, and why, when Mary his wife was almost ready to give birth to their first son?

Matthew 1:19• However, Joseph her husband, because he was righteous and did not want to make her a public spectacle, intended to divorce¹ her secretly.

Footnote: Or, to release Literally, to loose off

- 1• Joseph her husband was not present when the angel presented Yehowah God's plan to Mary privately, and when Joseph found out that his espoused one was pregnant, he planned to secretly divorce her, because he loved her, and did not want to make a spectacle of her over her supposed unfaithfulness to their marriage.**

[Question] How did Joseph first find out about his wife and her pregnancy, but what was later told to him, and by whom?

[Question] How did Joseph then feel about his espoused one, and how did he want to treat her?

- 2• In case there happened to be a virgin girl engaged to a man, and a man actually found her in the city and lay down with her. (Deuteronomy 22:23)**

[Question] How was an engaged virgin to be treated, if she had relations with another man before marriage?

- 3• In case a man takes a woman and does make her his possession as a wife, it must also occur that if she should find no favor in his eyes because he has found something indecent on her part, he must also write out a certificate of divorce for her and put it in her hand and dismiss her from his house. (Deuteronomy 24:1)**

[Question] What did Moses permit, if a man found some indecency within a woman before marriage while engaged?

- 4• The man is good who is gracious and is lending. He sustains his affairs with justice. (Psalms 112:5)**

[Question] What defines a good man, and how does he sustain his affairs?

- 5• The one walking about as a slanderer is uncovering confidential talk, but the one faithful in spirit is covering over a matter. (Proverbs 11:13)**

[Question] How does the man act who is faithful in spirit?

Matthew 1:20• But after he had thought these things over, look! Yehowah's¹ angel appeared to him in a dream, saying; **Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary your wife home, for that which has been begotten in her is by Holy Spirit.**

Footnote: Yehowah's J3, 4, 7-14, 16-18, 22-24 (Hebrew), (Yeho-wah'); Greek, Κυριου (Ky-ri'ou), without the definite article, Lord's *The Holy Scriptures*, by J. N. Darby, 1920 (corresponding to the German Elberfelder Bibel 1891), says in a Footnote on (Matthew 1:20) 'Lord' without the article, signifying as very often, 'Yehowah' This is the first of 237 places in the Christian Greek Scriptures where the divine name Yehowah occurs in the main text of this translation In addition it occurs 72 times in the Footnotes but not in the main text See Appendix 1D

- 1• However while Joseph was contemplating what he would do regard-ing this situation, Yehowah's angel appeared to him in a dream and told him that the son she carried was in fact begotten through Holy Spirit, and was to be God's son.**

[Question] What then happened to Joseph, while he was contemplating how to handle the situation with Mary his wife?

- 2• In answer the angel said to her; Holy Spirit will come upon you, and power of the Most High will overshadow you. For that reason also, what is born, will be called holy, God's Son. (Luke 1:35)**

[Question] What had the angel Gabriel told Mary when he first appeared to her?

- 3• Although Saul would inquire of Yehowah, Yehowah never answered him, either by dreams, or by the Urim, or by the prophets. (1 Samuel 28:6)**

[Question] How did Yehowah God come to treat unfaithful King Saul?

- 4• After they had withdrawn, look! Yehowah's angel appeared in a dream to Joseph, saying; Get up, take the young child and its mother and flee into Egypt, and stay there until I give you word, for Herod is about to search for the young child to destroy it. (Matthew 2:13)**

[Question] What also happened to Joseph through Yehowah's angels after the young child had been born, and why was this necessary?

- 5• When Herod had deceased, look! Yehowah's angel appeared**

in a dream to Joseph in Egypt (**Matthew 2:19**)

[Question] How did Yehowah God instruct Joseph while he was down in Egypt?

Matthew 1:21 **She will give birth to a son, and you must call his name Jesus,¹ for he will save his people from their sins.**

Footnote: Jesus Greek, Ἰησοῦς (*I-e-soun*); J¹⁻¹⁴, 16-18, 22 (Hebrew), (*Ye-shu'a*), Jeshua meaning Yehowah Is Salvation)

1• Joseph was then told by the angel that this son was to be called Jesus, and that he would save his people, the people of Israel from their sins. Thus the name of Jesus or Jeshua, actually pronounced Yeshua, which means, **Yehowah Is Salvation.**

[Question] What was Joseph told to call his firstborn child, and what was Joseph told that the child would eventually do?

2• But he had no intercourse with her until she gave birth to a son, and he called his name Jesus. (Matthew 1:25**)**

[Question] Did Joseph have intercourse with Mary before Jesus' birth?

3• And, look! You will conceive in your womb and give birth to a son, and you are to call his name Jesus. (Luke 1:31**)**

[Question] What was Mary told by the angel, about the child placed within her womb?

4• Now when eight days came to the full for circumcising him, his name was also called Jesus, the name called by the angel before he was conceived in the womb. (Luke 2:21**)**

[Question] In Israel, when was a child customarily given his name, and what was God's son then called?

5• Because my eyes have seen your means of saving. (Luke 2:30**)**

[Question] What did Simeon speak about the young child?

6• Consequently he is able also to save completely those who are approaching God through him, because he is always alive to plead for them. (Hebrews 7:25**)**

[Question] Why is Jesus a superior High Priest over any of the Aaronic priesthood?

7• God exalted this one as Chief Agent and Savior to his right hand, to give repentance to Israel and forgiveness of sins. (Acts of Apostles 5:31**)**

[Question] What position does Jesus now hold before God, in behalf of all mankind?

- 8• The next day he beheld Jesus coming toward him, and he said; See, the Lamb of God that takes away the sin of the world! (John 1:29)**

[Question] What did John the Baptist do to identify Jesus Christ, and what did he compare him to?

- 9• Furthermore, there is no salvation in anyone else, for there is not another name under heaven, that has been given among men, by which we must get saved. (Acts of Apostles 4:12)**

[Question] Whose name alone provides the human family with salvation before God?

- 10• By means of him we have the release by ransom through the blood of that one, yes, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of his undeserved kindness. (Ephesians 1:7)**

[Question] What does the blood of Jesus Christ free mankind from?

- 11• He himself bore our sins in his own body upon the stake, in order, that we might be done with sins and live to righteousness. And, by his stripes you were healed. (1 Peter 2:24)**

[Question] Why did Jesus Christ willingly suffer a painful death upon the torture stake, and how has this affected others?

- 12• He has sent redemption itself to his people. To time indefinite he has commanded his covenant. His name is holy and fear-inspiring. (Psalms 111:9)**

[Question] What did Yehowah God send to his people through Jesus Christ?

- 13• Who has ascended to heaven that he may descend? Who has gathered the wind in the hollow of both hands? Who has wrapped up the waters in a mantle? Who has made all the ends of the earth to rise? What is his name, and what the name of his son, in case you know? (Proverbs 30:4)**

[Question] What did the congregator attribute to Yehowah God and his Son, Jesus Christ?

- 14• Say to those who are anxious at heart; Be strong. Do not be afraid. Look! Your own God will come with vengeance itself, God even with a repayment. He himself will come**

and save you people. (**Isaiah 35:4**)

[Question] Why did the prophet Isaiah tell the people of Israel to be strong of heart?

- 15· And I will save you from all your impurities and call to the grain and make it abound, and I shall put upon you no famine. (**Ezekiel 36:29**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise to bring forth for his obedient people?

- 16· And they began to say to the woman; We do not believe any longer on account of your talk, for we have heard for ourselves, and we know that this man is for a certainty the savior of the world. (**John 4:42**)

[Question] What did the men of a Samaritan village testify about Jesus Christ after hearing his teachings?

- 17· After John, in advance of the entry of that One, had preached publicly to all the people of Israel baptism in symbol of repentance. (**Acts of Apostles 13:24**)

[Question] What did John the Baptist preach, and who was he a forerunner of?

- 18· In addition, we ourselves have beheld, and are bearing witness, that the Father has sent forth his Son as Savior of the world. (**1 John 4:14**)

[Question] What role does Jesus Christ play within the overall purpose of Yehowah God?

Matthew 1:22· All this actually came about for that to be fulfilled which was spoken by Yehowah¹ through his prophet, saying;

Footnote: See Appendix 1D

- 1· This birth of the Messiah through a virgin girl was earlier prophesied to happen through the Isaiah the prophet, and all the things that are written in the prophets always come true in time. This particular prophecy took some eight centuries to be fulfilled.

[Question] How had the birth of the Messiah been prophesied, and through whom, hundreds of years before?

- 2· Therefore Yehowah himself **will give** you men a sign. Look! The maiden herself **will actually become pregnant**, and she is giving **birth** to a **son**, and she **will certainly call his name** Immanuel. [**Immanuel means; With Us Is God**] (**Isaiah**

7:14)

[Question] What sign had Isaiah prophesied that Yehowah would give to the people?

[Question] What does the name Immanuel mean, and how was this name fulfilled in Jesus?

[Question] Was Jesus therefore ever called Immanuel?

- 3• So my word that goes forth from my mouth will prove to be. It will not return to me without results, but it will certainly do, that in which I have delighted, and it will have certain success in that for which I have sent it. (Isaiah 55:11)**

[Question] What does Yehowah God say prophetically about his own word?

- 4• Brothers, take as a pattern of the suffering of evil and the exercising of patience, the prophets, who spoke in the name of Yehowah. (James 5:10)**

[Question] What serves as a pattern for anointed Christians?

- 5• For prophecy was at no time brought by man's will, but men spoke from God as they were borne along by Holy Spirit. (2 Peter 1:21)**

[Question] Where does all true prophecy emanate forth from?

Matthew 1:23• Look! The virgin¹ will become pregnant and will give birth to a son, and they will call his name Immanuel,² which means, when translated, With Us Is God.

Footnote: The virgin Greek, *he par-the'nos*; J²²(Hebrew), *ha-'al-mah'*

Footnote: Greek, *Em-ma-nou-el'*; J^{17, 18, 22}(Hebrew), *'Im-ma-nu-'el'*

1• Isaiah had prophesied that a virgin would become pregnant, and that she would call the son's name Immanuel. Now Jesus never came to be called Immanuel, but his ministry clearly showed that he was Immanuel, for through him, Yehowah God was with his people. Thus there was scriptural backing for Joseph to believe, that this could happen to his wife, even though he had not yet had intercourse with her. [See also Isaiah - Bring Comfort To My People under (Isaiah 7:14)]

[Question] What had Isaiah prophesied about the coming Messiah, and what would he be called?

[Question] Was Jesus ever called Immanuel?

[Question] How though, through Jesus, was God with his people?

[Question] What scriptural backing was there for Joseph to believe the word of Mary and of the angels?

- 2• **Therefore Yehowah himself will give you men a sign. Look! The maiden herself will actually become pregnant, and she is giving birth to a son, and she will certainly call his name Immanuel. (Isaiah 7:14)**

[Question] What sign had Yehowah God promised, through Isaiah, to give to his people?

- 3• **And move on through Judah. He will actually flood and pass over. Up to the neck he will reach. And the outspreading of his wings must occur to fill the breadth of your land, O Immanuel! (Isaiah 8:8)**

[Question] Though Assyria was allowed to flood into Judah right up to the neck, how did Yehowah God show, that he was with his people, O' Immanuel?

- 4• **Plan out a scheme, and it will be broken up! Speak any word, and it will not stand, for God is with us! (Isaiah 8:10)**

[Question] What would not happen to God's people, because he was with them?

- 5• **May Yehowah our God prove to be with us just as he proved to be with our forefathers. May he neither leave us nor forsake us. (1 Kings 8:57)**

[Question] What did faithful king Solomon ask of Yehowah God in his prayer of dedication for the temple?

- 6• **One more he had, a beloved son. He sent him forth last to them, saying; They will respect my son. (Mark 12:6)**

[Question] In Jesus' illustration, who was sent forth last to the nation of Israel?

Matthew 1:24•• Then Joseph woke up from his sleep and did as the angel of Yehowah¹ had directed him, and he took his wife home.

Footnote: See Appendix 1D

- 1• **When Joseph then awoke from this dream, he knew that the son was by divine intervention, and changed his course of trying to divorce his espoused wife, and instead took her home to himself.**

[Question] What did Joseph realize upon awakening from a God given dream, and how did this affect him?

Matthew 1:25 But he had no intercourse with her¹ until she gave birth to a son, and he called his name Jesus.

Footnote: Literally, he was not knowing her

1 Though they were legally married, and they were living together, he had no intercourse with Mary until after she gave birth to the child, whom they named Jesus, according to the angel's instructions.

[Question] Though legally married, what did Joseph and Mary not do, until after the birth of Jesus?

2 But Mary said to the angel; How is this to be, since I am having no intercourse with a man? (**Luke 1:34**)

[Question] What complaint did Mary raise before the angel Gabriel?

3 And she gave birth to her son, the firstborn, and she bound him with cloth bands and laid him in a manger, because there was no place for them in the lodging room. (**Luke 2:7**)

[Question] In what humble surroundings was Jesus Christ born, and why there?

4 And, look! You will conceive in your womb and give birth to a son, and you are to call his name Jesus. (**Luke 1:31**)

[Question] What was Mary told would happen to her, and what was she to call this son of hers?

5 Now when eight days came to the full for circumcising him, his name was also called Jesus, the name called by the angel before he was conceived in the womb. (**Luke 2:21**)

[Question] In Israel, when did they assign the name to a child, and what was this child named, and by whom?

6 She will give birth to a son, and you must call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins. (**Matthew 1:21**)

[Question] What was Mary told her son would be called?

7 To get registered with Mary, who had been given him in marriage as promised, at present heavy with child. (**Luke 2:5**)

[Question] Why did Joseph and Mary travel to Bethlehem, even though she was at term?

8 Do not be depriving each other of it, except by mutual consent for an appointed time, that you may devote time

to prayer and may come together again, that Satan may not keep tempting you for your lack of self-regulation. (1 Corinthians 7:5)

[Question] What are married couples told not to deprive each other of, except by mutual consent?

Matthew Chapter 2

Matthew 2:1 After Jesus had been born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, look! Astrologers¹ from eastern parts came to Jerusalem.

Footnote: Or, magi Greek, *ma'goi*

1• Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea that same city of Judah from which King David, his illustrious ancestor, had hailed from. Through the prophet Daniel and his prophecy of the seventy weeks of years, many within Israel were looking for this promised Messiah. Also others, astrologers from eastern parts, from Babylon, came looking for him, stating that they had followed his star to Jerusalem.

[Question] Where was Jesus born, and what illustrious ancestor of his, was also born there?

[Question] At the time of his birth what were many within Israel looking for, and why so?

[Question] What did some astrologers come then to Israel looking for, and saying what?

2• And you, O Bethlehem Ephrathah, the one too little to get to be among the thousands of Judah, **from you there will come out to me the one who is to become ruler in Israel**, whose origin is from early times, from the days of time indefinite. (**Micah 5:2**)

[Question] What prophecy of Micah foretold the birthplace of the Messiah?

3• Of course, Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judea, to David's city, which is called Bethlehem, because of his being a **member of the house and family of David**. (**Luke 2:4**)

[Question] Why did Joseph travel to Bethlehem with Mary, who was now ready to deliver her child?

4• In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there happened to be a certain priest named Zechariah of the division of Abijah, and he had a wife from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (**Luke 1:5**)

[Question] How does the Bible introduce John the Baptist's parents to us?

5• There are seventy weeks, that have been determined upon

your people, and upon your holy city, in order to terminate the transgression, and to finish off sin, and to make atonement for error, and to bring in righteousness for times indefinite, and to imprint a seal upon vision and prophet, and to anoint the Holy of Holies. (Daniel 9:24)

[Question] What would happen in Israel, at the end of the seventy weeks Daniel prophesied about?

- 6· And you should know and have the insight that from the going forth of the word to restore and to rebuild Jerusalem until Messiah the Leader, there will be seven weeks, also sixty-two weeks. She will return and be actually rebuilt, with a public square and moat, but in the straits of the times. (Daniel 9:25)**

[Question] How had the prophet Daniel foretold the coming of the Messiah and its timing, in relation to the rebuilding of Jerusalem after the exile?

- 7· And Solomon's wisdom was vaster than the wisdom of all the Orientals and than all the wisdom of Egypt. (1 Kings 4:30)**

[Question] Where does true wisdom come forth from?

- 8· Salma the father of Bethlehem, Hareph the father of Bethgader. (1 Chronicles 2:51)**

[Question] Who founded the city of Bethlehem?

- 9· The sons of Salma were Bethlehem and the Netophathites, Atroth-beth-joab and half of the Manahathites, the Zorites. (1 Chronicles 2:54)**

[Question] Whose son was the city named after?

- 10· Thus he rebuilt Bethlehem and Etam and Tekoa. (2 Chronicles 11:6)**

[Question] Who rebuilt the city of Bethlehem?

Matthew 2:2· Saying; Where is the one born king of the Jews? For we saw his star when we were in the east,¹ and we have come to do him obeisance.

Footnote: Or, we saw his star from the east

- 1· These astrologers from Babylon came looking for this one, born king of the Jews, stating that they had followed his star from the east and that they wanted to do him obeisance, or to**

honor him. No doubt they had come to know of this king's existence through the many Jews there in Babylon after the exile, who remained there, and who knew of these prophecies.

[Question] What did the astrologers state, about why they had come to Israel?

[Question] What had they no doubt heard through Jewish exiles there in Babylon?

- 2• The scepter will not turn aside from Judah, neither the commander's staff from between his feet, until Shiloh comes, and to him the obedience of the peoples will belong. (Genesis 49:10)**

[Question] Where had Jacob prophesied, that the commander's staff would not turn aside from?

- 3• Also, they posted above his head the charge against him, in writing. This is Jesus the King of the Jews. (Matthew 27:37)**

[Question] What did men charge Jesus with, leading to his death?

- 4• You have grown weary with the multitude of your counselors. Let them stand up, now, and save you, the worshipers of the heavens, the lookers at the stars, those giving out knowledge at the new moons concerning the things that will come upon you. (Isaiah 47:13)**

[Question] What were the Babylonians always looking to for guidance, rather than to God?

- 5• When they had heard the king, they went their way, and, look! The star they had seen when they were in the east, went ahead of them, until it came to a stop, above where the young child was. (Matthew 2:9)**

[Question] What did these astrologers say that they had followed, that led them to the young child, Jesus?

Matthew 2:3•• At hearing this King Herod was agitated, and all Jerusalem along with him.

- 1• This caused quite a stir among the ruler of Jerusalem, who at the time was King Herod. He was agitated, fearing his own kingship and kingly line would be lost, for he was an Edomite, and not a Jew, and he caused all Jerusalem to become agitated over the matter.**

[Question] What happened among the rulership in Jerusalem, when these astrologers arrived there looking of the Messiah, and why?

Matthew 2:4 And on gathering together all the chief priests and scribes of the people he began to inquire of them where the Christ¹ was to be born.

Footnote: The Christ Greek, ὁ Χριστός (*ho Khri-stos*); J1-14, 16-18, 22 (Hebrew), (*ham-Ma-shi'ach*, the Messiah; the Anointed One)

1 So Herod gathered together the Jewish religious leaders and inquired of them where this promised seed of the Messiah was prophesied to come forth from.

[Question] What then, did wicked King Herod do to protect his interests?

[Question] Who did he gather before him and what did he ask of them?

Matthew 2:5 They said to him; In Bethlehem of Judea, for this is how it has been written through the prophet.

1 They replied that he was to come forth from the city of Bethlehem in Judea, and they showed him the scripture in Micah where it was prophesied to take place.

[Question] Where did they point him to according to what prophecy?

2 And you, O Bethlehem Ephrathah, the one too little to get to be among the thousands of Judah, **from you there will come out to me the one who is to become ruler in Israel**, whose origin is from early times, from the days of time indefinite. (**Micah 5:2**)

[Question] What did the prophecy of Micah say, and about what Judean city?

3 Has not the Scripture said that the Christ is coming from the offspring of David, and from Bethlehem, the village where David used to be? (**John 7:42**)

[Question] What was common knowledge then among the Jews, as to where the Christ would come forth from?

Matthew 2:6 And you, O Bethlehem¹ of the land of Judah, are by no means the most insignificant city among the governors² of Judah. For out of you will come forth a governing one,³ who will shepherd my people, Israel.

Footnote: Meaning House of Bread Greek, *Be-thle-em'*; J¹⁷, 18, 22(Hebrew), *Behth le'chem*

Footnote: Or, leaders Greek, *he-ge-mo'sin*

Footnote: Or, a leader Greek, *he-gou'me-nos*

1• Micah prophesied that Bethlehem, though a small city among the cities of Judah would be blessed with the birth of the Messiah in her midst. From within her would come the governing one, who would come to shepherd and rule over the people of Israel.

[Question] How did the prophecy show a future blessing upon Bethlehem, though then only a small and unimportant city within Judah?

2• And you, O Bethlehem Ephrathah, the one too little to get to be among the thousands of Judah, from you there will come out to me the one who is to become ruler in Israel, whose origin is from early times, from the days of time indefinite. (Micah 5:2)

[Question] Who was prophesied to come forth out of Bethlehem?

3• The One saying of Cyrus: He is my shepherd, and all that I delight in he will completely carry out. Even in my saying of Jerusalem: She will be rebuilt. And of the temple: You will have your foundation laid. (Isaiah 44:28)

[Question] Whom did Yehowah God use to effect the rebuilding effort in Jerusalem, and the return of his people Israel to the Promised Land?

4• Both yesterday and previously while Saul happened to be king over us, you yourself became the one leading Israel out and bringing it in. And Yehowah proceeded to say to you, you yourself will shepherd my people Israel, and you yourself will become leader over Israel. (2 Samuel 5:2)

[Question] What did all the tribes of Israel say to David, upon his becoming king?

5• Then they pulled away from Bethel. And while there was yet a good stretch of land before coming to Ephrath, Rachel proceeded to give birth, and it was going hard with her in making the delivery. (Genesis 35:16)

[Question] Who was born between Bethel and Ephrath?

6• And as for me, when I was coming from Paddan, Rachel died alongside me in the land of Canaan on the way while there was yet a good stretch of land before coming to Ephrath, so that I buried her there on the way to Ephrath, that is to say, Bethlehem. (Genesis 48:7)

[Question] What did this area later come to be called?

- 7• The scepter will not turn aside from Judah, neither the commander's staff from between his feet, until Shiloh comes, and to him the obedience of the peoples will belong. (**Genesis 49:10**)

[Question] What would not turn aside from Judah until Shiloh came?

- 8• And his concubine began to commit fornication against him. Finally she went away from him to the house of her father at Bethlehem in Judah and continued there fully four months. (**Judges 19:2**)

[Question] What incident occurred at this same place many years earlier, in the days of the judges of Israel?

- 9• Now David was the son of this Ephrathite from Bethlehem of Judah whose name was Jesse. And he had eight sons. And in the days of Saul the man was already old among men. (**1 Samuel 17:12**)

[Question] How many sons did Jesse have, and who became the most renowned?

- 10• For Judah himself proved to be superior among his brothers, and the one for leader was from him, but the right as firstborn was Joseph's. (**1 Chronicles 5:2**)

[Question] Where was the one chosen for leader within Israel to come forth from?

- 11• The men of Bethlehem and Netophah, a hundred and eighty-eight. (**Nehemiah 7:26**)

[Question] Who were among the ones returning under Nehemiah after the exile?

- 12• Of course, Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judea, to David's city, which is called Bethlehem, because of his being a member of the house and family of David. (**Luke 2:4**)

[Question] Where then, did Jesus' father Joseph go to register, and why?

Matthew 2:7• Then Herod secretly summoned the astrologers and carefully ascertained from them the time of the star's appearing.

- 1• Herod who was not a spiritual man, then consulted with the astrologers concerning when they had first seen the appearance

of the star denoting this one's presence, for he was bent on destroying the young child, to preserve his own kingship. He later murdered all the young male children in Bethlehem and her surrounding districts, due to what they reported to him concerning the timing of the appearance of this star.

[Question] Whom now did King Herod consult with, and to what purpose?

[Question] What later showed, that this was indeed his purpose?

2• Then Herod, seeing he had been outwitted by the astrologers, fell into a great rage, and he sent out and had all the boys in Bethlehem and in all its districts done away with, from two years of age and under, according to the time that he had carefully ascertained from the astrologers. (Matthew 2:16)

[Question] What did Herod do, when he was outwitted by Yehowah God through the astrologers from Babylon?

Matthew 2:8• And, when sending them to Bethlehem, he said; Go make a careful search for the young child, and when you have found it, report back to me, that I too may go and do it obeisance.

1• Herod then instructed the astrologers to go and find the young child, and then to report back to him, what things they found out. He feigned to them, that he also wanted to go and to do it obeisance, but his plans were far different, than what he revealed to them.

[Question] What lie did Herod propagate to the astrologers, as to why he wanted to find the young child?

2• The wicked one is plotting against the righteous one, and at him he is grinding his teeth. (Psalms 37:12)

[Question] Against whom does the wicked one plot?

3• The mouth of the righteous one is a source of life, but as regards the mouth of the wicked ones, it covers up violence. (Proverbs 10:11)

[Question] What does the mouth of the wicked ones cover up?

4• Indeed they give advice so as to allure from one's own dignity, they take pleasure in a lie. With their mouth they bless, but inside themselves they call down evil. (Psalms 62:4)

[Question] What do the wicked ones take pleasure in?

[Question] What do they say to others, while planning what?

Matthew 2:9 When they had heard the king, they went their way, and, look! The star they had seen when they were in the east¹ went ahead of them, until it came to a stop above where the young child was.

Footnote: Or, they had seen from the east

1 Then the astrologers went on their search for the young child. They thus continued following the star that they had seen in their homeland until it led them to the young child, stopping above where the young child was born.

[Question] After leaving Herod then, what did the astrologers do, and why?

[Question] Where then, did the star they followed lead them?

2 Saying; Where is the one born king of the Jews? For we saw his star when we were in the east, and we have come to do him obeisance. (**Matthew 2:2**)

[Question] When arriving in Bethlehem, what did they say they were looking for?

Matthew 2:10 On seeing the star they rejoiced very much indeed.

1 Thus they rejoiced when they saw this star.

[Question] How did they feel at seeing the star?

Matthew 2:11 And when they went into the house they saw the young child with Mary its mother, and, falling down, they did obeisance to it. They also opened their treasures and presented it with gifts, gold and frankincense and myrrh.

1 They entered into the house, where they saw Mary its mother and also the young child. They then fell down and did obeisance to it, and presented the young child with treasures and gifts. They gave it frankincense gold and myrrh, valuable treasures in that time.

[Question] What then, did they do upon finding the young child in Bethlehem with its parents?

2 And Yehowah went on to say to Moses; Take to yourself perfumes, stacte drops and onycha and perfumed galbanum and pure frankincense. There should be the

same portion of each. (Exodus 30:34)

[Question] What incense was used, among several others, as part of the holy anointing oil under Moses?

- 3• As for the good-for-nothing men, they said; How will this one save us? Accordingly they despised him, and they did not bring any gift to him. But he continued like one grown speechless. (1 Samuel 10:27)**

[Question] How did the good for nothing men treat one, that they felt was worthless?

Matthew 2:12• However, because they were given divine warning in a dream not to return to Herod, they withdrew to their country by another way.

- 1• However Yehowah God saw their larger role, and changed it, so that he warned them in a dream not to return to Herod, and to just return to their own homeland, for Herod was wickedly seeking the demise of this young child.**

[Question] Who was watching what was happening, and how did he influence the events that followed?

- 2• But hearing that Archelaus ruled as king of Judea instead of his father Herod, he became afraid to depart for there. Moreover, being given divine warning in a dream, he withdrew into the territory of Galilee. (Matthew 2:22)**

[Question] How did Joseph feel when hearing that the son of Herod was ruling in Israel, about returning to his homeland, so where did he return to?

- 3• To turn aside a man from his deed, and that he may cover pride itself from an able-bodied man. (Job 33:17)**

[Question] What does Yehowah God do for men at times?

- 5• Moreover, while he was sitting on the judgment seat, his wife sent out to him, saying; Have nothing to do with that righteous man, for I suffered a lot today in a dream because of him. (Matthew 27:19)**

[Question] How did Pilate's wife suffer over Jesus?

Matthew 2:13 After they had withdrawn, look! Yehowah's¹ angel appeared in a dream to Joseph, saying; **Get up, take the young child and its mother and flee into Egypt, and stay there until I give you word, for Herod is about to search for the young child to destroy it.**

Footnote: See Appendix 1D

1• Also to Joseph, the husband of Mary, Yehowah gave warning in a dream, telling Joseph to flee down into Egypt, where they would be safe until wicked Herod died, and later Yehowah God would notify Joseph and Mary when it was safe to return to their homeland, for Herod was seeking for the young child's life.

[Question] Whom then, did Yehowah God warn, and how?

2• But after he had thought these things over, look! Yehowah's angel appeared to him in a dream, saying; Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary your wife home, for that which has been begotten in her, is by Holy Spirit. (**Matthew 1:20**)

[Question] How had Joseph earlier been told to accept the pregnancy of his wife, as something from God?

3• When Herod had deceased, look! Yehowah's angel appeared in a dream to Joseph in Egypt (**Matthew 2:19**)

[Question] What happened to Joseph once Herod died?

Matthew 2:14 So he got up and took along the young child and its mother by night, and withdrew into Egypt.

1• Therefore Joseph left in haste by night after receiving the dream, and went down to Egypt along with the infant and its mother, as soon as he received the dream.

[Question] What did Joseph do, as soon as he had this dream, and where did they go to live?

Matthew 2:15 And he stayed there until the decease of Herod, for that to be fulfilled which was spoken by Yehowah¹ through his prophet, saying: **Out of Egypt I called my son.**

Footnote: See Appendix 1D

1• This new family then stayed in Egypt for a time, until the decease of wicked Herod came about. Also this fulfilled the

prophecy of Hosea, where Yehowah God stated, that he would call his son out of Egypt.

[Question] Where then, did Jesus spend his first few years of life?

[Question] What prophecy did this then fulfill?

2• Do not think I came to destroy the Law or the Prophets. I came, not to destroy, but to fulfill. (**Matthew 5:17**)

[Question] What did Jesus state about the Law and the Prophets?

[Question] Did he actually do this by his life course?

3• When Israel was a boy, then I loved him, and out of Egypt I called my son. (**Hosea 11:1**)

[Question] What had Hosea spoken about God's Son?

Matthew 2:16• Then Herod, seeing he had been outwitted by the astrologers, fell into a great rage, and he sent out and had all the boys in Bethlehem and in all its districts done away with, from two years of age and under, according to the time that he had carefully ascertained from the astrologers.¹

Footnote: Or, magi

1• When Herod saw that he had been outwitted by Yehowah God and the astrologers had returned home, he fell into a great rage over it, and he then ordered for all the young boys two years old and younger in Bethlehem, and all of its districts, to be done away with by the sword. This was done, according to the time he had carefully ascertained from the astrologers, as to the time of the birth of the child. Thus he was willing to murder many, just to assure destruction of this one, destined to rule over Israel.

[Question] How did wicked King Herod feel about being outwitted by the astrologers, and what order did he give?

[Question] What then, was he willing to do to solidify his rule?

2• Then Herod secretly summoned the astrologers and carefully ascertained from them the time of the star's appearing. (**Matthew 2:7**)

[Question] What timing did Herod carefully ascertain from the astrologers?

3• Finally Pharaoh commanded all his people, saying; Every newborn son you are to throw into the river Nile, but every daughter you are to preserve alive. (**Exodus 1:22**)

[Question] How did the killing of these young children parallel events in Moses' time down in Egypt?

- 4• **As a growling lion and an onrushing bear is a wicked ruler over a lowly people. (Proverbs 28:15)**

[Question] What is a wicked ruler like over a lowly people?

- 5• **This is what Yehowah has said; In Ramah a voice is being heard, lamentation and bitter weeping. Rachel weeping over her sons. She has refused to be comforted over her sons, because they are no more. (Jeremiah 31:15)**

[Question] What prophecy of Jeremiah was also fulfilled, in what Herod did to those in Bethlehem and the surrounding region?

Matthew 2:17•• Then that was fulfilled which was spoken through Jeremiah the prophet, saying:

- 1• **This also brought fulfillment to the prophecy of Jeremiah below.**

[Question] What prophecy was then fulfilled?

- 2• **This is what Yehowah has said: In Ramah, a voice is being heard, lamentation and bitter weeping. Rachel weeping over her sons. She has refused to be comforted over her sons, because they are no more. (Jeremiah 31:15)**

[Question] Why is the second wife of Jacob, Rachel prophetically said to be weeping?

- 3• **The words of Jeremiah the son of Hilkiah, one of the priests that were in Anathoth in the land of Benjamin. (Jeremiah 1:1)**

[Question] Where did Jeremiah hail from, and in what territory was that in?

Matthew 2:18•• **A voice was heard in Ramah, weeping and much wailing. It was Rachel weeping for her children, and she was unwilling to take comfort, because they are no more.**

- 1• **Ramah was a city of Benjamin near to Bethel, and Rachel was the mother of Benjamin, a part of Israel. The prophecy stated, that she would weep for her sons, and would refuse to be comforted, because they are no more. Thus wicked Herod fulfilled the Bible prophecy of Jeremiah, by killing her sons while**

looking for the Messiah to destroy him. However Yehowah God thwarted his efforts and preserved his own son alive.

[Question] Where was Ramah located, and in which tribal territory?

[Question] Why would Rachel then refuse to be comforted?

[Question] Over what then was this prophecy fulfilled?

[Question] Yet how did Yehowah God avert the destruction of his firstborn son?

2• This is what Yehowah has said; In Ramah a voice is being heard, lamentation and bitter weeping. Rachel, weeping over her sons. She has refused to be comforted over her sons, because they are no more. (**Jeremiah 31:15**)

[Question] What did the prophecy state that Rachel would do, and why?

3• This is what Yehowah has said; Hold back your voice from weeping, and your eyes from tears, for there exists a reward for your activity, is the utterance of Yehowah, and they will certainly return from the land of the enemy. (**Jeremiah 31:16**)

[Question] What comfort did Jeremiah also give to Rachel prophetically for what does the resurrection promise?

4• Thus Rachel died and was buried on the way to Ephrath, that is to say, Bethlehem. (**Genesis 35:19**)

[Question] Where was Rachel buried, and what was that known as in Jesus' day?

5• And all his sons and all his daughters kept rising up to comfort him, but he kept refusing to take comfort and saying; For I shall go down mourning to my son into Sheol! And his father continued weeping for him. (**Genesis 37:35**)

[Question] How did Jacob feel when he lost his son Joseph, seemingly to death?

Matthew 2:19•• When Herod had deceased, look! Yehowah's¹ angel appeared in a dream to Joseph in Egypt.

Footnote: See Appendix 1D

1• As soon as wicked Herod was deceased, Yehowah's angel again appeared to Joseph in a dream, and told Joseph to return to Israel, his homeland.

[Question] What happened to Joseph, as soon as wicked Herod deceased as Yehowah's hand?

- 2• But after he had thought these things over, look! Yehowah's angel appeared to him in a dream, saying; Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary your wife home, for that which has been begotten in her is by Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:20)

[Question] What did Yehowah's angel say to Joseph in a dream earlier?

- 3• After they had withdrawn, look! Yehowah's angel appeared in a dream to Joseph, saying; Get up, take the young child and its mother and flee into Egypt, and stay there until I give you word, for Herod is about to search for the young child to destroy it. (Matthew 2:13)

[Question] What was Joseph told by the hand of the angel through a dream, when Herod was yet alive?

Matthew 2:20• And said; **Get up, take the young child and its mother and be on your way into the land of Israel, for those who were seeking the soul¹ of the young child are dead.**

Footnote: Or, life Greek, *psy·khen*'; J^{17, 18, 22}(Hebrew), *ne'phesh* See Appendix 4A

- 1• The angel then instructed Joseph to return to Israel, for those who were seeking for the young child's death, were themselves dead.

[Question] What did he now see in a dream, and where was he told to take the young child, and why?

Matthew 2:21• So he got up and took the young child and its mother and entered into the land of Israel.

- 1• Thus Joseph obeyed and returned to Israel to his hometown of Nazareth in Galilee.

[Question] Where then, did Joseph take Mary and the young child to live permanently?

Matthew 2:22• But hearing that Archelaus ruled as king of Judea instead of his father Herod, he became afraid to depart for there. Moreover, being given divine warning in a dream, he withdrew into the territory of Galilee.

- 1• Joseph heard that the son of Herod, Archelaus was now ruling in Judea, and he was afraid to go back into Judea, so he withdrew into the territory of Galilee.

[Question] Why did Joseph not now return to Judah, his birthplace, but instead go into Galilee?

- 2• However, because they were given divine warning in a dream not to return to Herod, they withdrew to their country by another way. (**Matthew 2:12**)

[Question] How did Yehowah God warn the astrologers to protect the child?

- 3• In the course of those days Jesus came from Nazareth of Galilee, and was baptized in the Jordan by John. (**Mark 1:9**)

[Question] Where does the Bible say, that Jesus came forth from, when he began his ministry?

- 4• So when they had carried out all the things according to the Law of Yehowah, they went back into Galilee, to their own city, Nazareth. (**Luke 2:39**)

[Question] Where did Joseph and Mary first return to briefly, directly after Jesus birth, before they went down to Egypt?

Matthew 2:23• And came and dwelt in a city named Nazareth,¹ that there might be fulfilled what was spoken through the prophets: **He will be called a Nazarene.**²

Footnote: Or, Sprout-town Greek, Na-za-ret'; J22(Hebrew), Na-tse'reth

Footnote: Nazarene J17, 18, 22(Hebrew), Nots-ri' Greek, Na-zo-rai'os; probably from Hebrew ne'tser, meaning sprout hence, figuratively offspring See (Isaiah 11:1) and Footnote Sprout

- 1• There in Nazareth of Galilee he settled down with Mary and they raised a family there. Now the term Nazareth comes from the word Nazarene meaning, **Sprout**, and so this fulfilled several prophecies in Isaiah, Jeremiah and Zechariah, that relate to this term, **Sprout**.

[Question] How did Jesus being raised in Nazareth also fulfill a Bible prophecy?

[Question] What does the term Nazarene mean?

- 2• And he went down with them and came to Nazareth, and he continued subject to them. Also, his mother carefully kept all these sayings in her heart. (**Luke 2:51**)

[Question] Where then, did Jesus eventually grow up?

[Question] How did Mary its mother feel about all the things she had been told about the boy Jesus?

- 3• Philip found Nathanael and said to him; We have found the one of whom Moses, in the Law, and the Prophets wrote, Jesus, the son of Joseph, from Nazareth. ([John 1:45](#))

[Question] What did Phillip tell to Nathanael, and where did he say that Jesus was from?

- 4• And there must go forth a **twig** out of the stump of Jesse, and out of his roots a **sprout** will be fruitful. ([Isaiah 11:1](#))

[Question] What did Isaiah state would go forth out of the stump of Jesse?

- 5• And he will come up like a **twig** before one, and like a **root** out of waterless land. No stately form does he have, nor any splendor, and when we shall see him, there is not the appearance so that we should desire him. ([Isaiah 53:2](#))

[Question] What did Isaiah later prophesy about this sprout, and how others would view him?

- 6• Look! There are days coming, is the utterance of Yehowah, and I will raise up to David a righteous **sprout**. And a king will certainly reign and act with discretion, and execute justice and righteousness in the land. ([Jeremiah 23:5](#))

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise to raise up for David?

[Question] What would this one become, and how would he rule?

- 7• Hear, please, O Joshua the High Priest, you and your companions who are sitting before you, for they are men serving as portents. For here I am bringing in my servant **Sprout**! ([Zechariah 3:8](#))

[Question] What did Yehowah promise to bring in during High Priest Joshua's day?

- 8• And after coming into his home territory he began to teach them in their synagogue, so that they were astounded and said; Where did this man get this wisdom and these powerful works? ([Matthew 13:54](#))

[Question] How did the people of Jesus' hometown feel, when they first heard him preach and teach among them?

- 9• So when they had carried out all the things according to the Law of Yehowah, they went back into Galilee to their own city **Nazareth**. ([Luke 2:39](#))

[Question] Where did Joseph and Mary go at first after leaving Jerusalem after Jesus birth?

- 10^{••} And he came to **Nazareth**, where he had been reared. According to his custom on the Sabbath day, he entered into the synagogue, and he stood up to read. (**Luke 4:16**)

[Question] Where was Jesus reared as a child?

[Question] What was Jesus' custom on the Sabbath Day?

- 11[•] Ah! What have we to do with you, Jesus you **Nazarene**? Did you come to destroy us? I know exactly who you are, the Holy One of God. (**Luke 4:34**)

[Question] What did the demons he expelled, call him?

- 12[•] And he said to them; What things? They said to him; The things concerning Jesus the **Nazarene**, who became a prophet powerful in work and word before God and all the people. (**Luke 24:19**)

[Question] What is Jesus referred to as many times within the scriptures?

- 13[•] They answered him; Jesus the **Nazarene**. He said to them; I am he. Now Judas, his betrayer, was also standing with them. (**John 18:5**)

[Question] When they came looking for Jesus on the night of Jesus' death, who did they ask for, for how was Jesus known?

- 14[•] Men of Israel, hear these words; Jesus the **Nazarene**, a man publicly shown by God to you through powerful works and portents and signs that God did through him in your midst, just as you yourselves know. (**Acts of Apostles 2:22**)

[Question] How was Jesus known throughout the region, and how did Peter address him before others?

- 15[•] However, Peter said; Silver and gold I do not possess, but what I do have is what I give you. In the name of Jesus Christ the **Nazarene**, walk! (**Acts of Apostles 3:6**)

[Question] In whose name did Peter perform a miracle?

- 16[•] Let it be known to all of you and to all the people of Israel, that in the name of Jesus Christ the **Nazarene**, whom you impaled, but whom God raised up from the dead, by this one, does this man stand here sound in front of you. (**Acts of Apostles 4:10**)

[Question] Whom did Peter testify to the Jews, that they had unlawfully killed?

- 17[•] For we have found this man a pestilent fellow and stirring up

seditions among all the Jews throughout the inhabited earth and a spearhead of the sect of the Nazarenes. ([Acts of Apostles 24:5](#))

[Question] What did the way of Christianity come to be called early on by some?

- 18· But the nations became wrathful, and your own wrath came, and the appointed time for the dead to be judged, and to give their reward to your slaves the prophets, and to the holy ones, and to those fearing your name, the small and the great, and to bring to ruin those ruining the earth. ([Revelation 11:18](#))**

[Question] What day is fast approaching today, and what will Yehowah God then do?

Matthew Chapter 3

Matthew 3:1 In those days John¹ the Baptist² came preaching³ in the wilderness of Judea.

Footnote: John Greek, I-o-a'nes; J1-14, 16-18, 22(Hebrew), Yoh·cha·nan', Johanan meaning Yehowah Has Shown Favor; Yehowah Has Been Gracious

Footnote: Or, the Immerser; the Dipper Greek, ho Ba-pti-stes'; J17, 22(Hebrew), ham·Mat·bil'

Footnote: Or, heralding Greek, ke-rys'son; Latin, prae'di-cans

1 The ministry of Jesus Christ started with an introduction by John the Baptist. John was the son of the priest Zechariah and his wife Elizabeth. John was related to Jesus Christ, a cousin, and Mary his mother knew Zechariah and Elizabeth.

[Question] How did the ministry of Jesus Christ first start?

[Question] Who was John the Baptist, and what was his relationship to Jesus?

2 John the baptizer turned up in the wilderness, preaching baptism in symbol of repentance for forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4)

[Question] Where did John the Baptist first turn up, and what did he preach?

3 There arose a man that was sent forth as a representative of God. His name was John. (John 1:6)

[Question] Whose representative was John the Baptist?

4 While these were on their way, Jesus started to say to the crowds respecting John; What did you go out into the wilderness to behold? A reed being tossed by a wind? (Matthew 11:7)

[Question] What did Jesus later ask of the people, who went out to see John the Baptist?

5 So he came into all the country around the Jordan, preaching baptism in symbol of repentance, for forgiveness of sins. (Luke 3:3)

[Question] What was the message of John the Baptist?

6 But John also was baptizing in Aenon near Salim, because there was a great quantity of water there, and people kept coming and being baptized. (John 3:23)

[Question] Where did John the Baptist begin his ministry, and why there?

[Question] Would a great quantity of water be needed, if baptism was only a sprinkling, and not a complete immersion?

- 7• After John, in advance of the entry of that One, had preached publicly to all the people of Israel baptism, in symbol of repentance. (Acts of Apostles 13:24)**

[Question] What had John the Baptist been sent to preach, and who was he sent forth in advance of?

Matthew 3:2•• Saying; Repent, for the kingdom of the heavens¹ has drawn near.

Footnote: Kingdom of the heavens Greek, ba-si-lei'a ton ou-ra-non'; Latin, re'gnum cae-lo-rum; J²²(Hebrew), mal-khuth' sha-ma'yim

- 1• John's message was one of repentance for forgiveness of sins, and the purpose of his coming before the Messiah, was to prepare the hearts of righteous ones for the coming Messiah. He preached repentance for forgiveness of sins, for the Kingdom of the heavens had approached.**

[Question] What was John the Baptist's message?

[Question] What had he come forth to make ready?

- 2• So he came into all the country around the Jordan, preaching baptism in symbol of repentance for forgiveness of sins. (Luke 3:3)**

[Question] What part of Israel did John the Baptist start his ministry around, and what did he preach?

- 3• From that time on Jesus commenced preaching and saying; Repent, you people, for the kingdom of the heavens has drawn near. (Matthew 4:17)**

[Question] What also was the message of Jesus when first he began to preach?

- 4• Therefore each one according to his ways is how I shall judge you, O house of Israel, is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Yehowah. Turn back, yes, cause a turning back from all your transgressions, and let nothing prove to be for you people a stumbling block causing error. (Ezekiel 18:30)**

[Question] How does Yehowah God judge each man?

[Question] Since we will be held accountable for our actions, then what is the truly wise course?

- 5• John the baptizer turned up in the wilderness, preaching baptism in symbol of repentance, for forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4)**

[Question] Where did John the Baptist start his ministry, and what was his message?

- 6• And cure the sick ones in it, and go on telling them, the kingdom of God has come near to you. (Luke 10:9)**

[Question] What did Jesus also preach as he went healing people?

Matthew 3:3• This, in fact, is the one spoken of through Isaiah the prophet in these words: Listen! Someone is crying out in the wilderness; Prepare the way of Yehowah,¹ you people! Make his roads straight.

Footnote: See Appendix 1D

- 1• Matthew now identifies John the Baptist as the very one who fulfilled the scripture in Isaiah, about someone who is crying out in the wilderness, to prepare the way of Yehowah, and make his roads straight. John indeed preached in the wilderness of Judea living upon insect locusts and wild honey. His message was repentance, thus bringing Yehowah's people back, to the straight course of the truth, through a turning around in repentance.**

[Question] Whom does Matthew identify as the one who fulfilled this scripture in Isaiah?

[Question] Where did John the Baptist live, and what was his message?

[Question] What **way** did he try to turn the people back to?

- 2• Just as it is written in Isaiah the prophet: Look! I am sending forth my messenger before your face, who will prepare your way. (Mark 1:2)**

[Question] What had Isaiah said about the course of John the Baptist?

- 3• He said: I am a voice of someone crying out in the wilderness, make the way of Yehowah straight, just as Isaiah the prophet said. (John 1:23)**

[Question] What did John the Baptist say about his own role scripturally?

- 4• Listen! Someone is calling out in the wilderness; Clear up the way of Yehowah, you people! Make the highway for our God through the desert plain straight. (Isaiah 40:3)**

[Question] What scripture text was this taken from, in Isaiah?

- 5• And he will certainly render judgment among the nations and **set matters straight respecting many peoples**. And they will have to beat their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning shears. Nation will not lift up sword against nation, neither will they learn war anymore. (**Isaiah 2:4**)

[Question] What did Isaiah also state, that Yehowah's judgments would do among the nations?

[Question] What would the nations then learn no more?

- 6• Look! I am sending my messenger, and **he must clear up a way before me**. And suddenly, there will come to His temple, the true Lord, whom you people are seeking, and the messenger of the covenant, in whom you are delighting. Look! He will certainly come, Yehowah of armies has said. (**Malachi 3:1**)

[Question] How had Malachi also spoken similar things about God's messenger, John the Baptist?

[Question] Who would this one precede?

- 7• This is he concerning whom it is written: Look! I myself am sending forth my messenger before your face, who will prepare your way ahead of you! (**Matthew 11:10**)

[Question] How did Matthew apply this scripture in Malachi?

- 8• But as for you, young child, you will be called a prophet of the Most High, **for you will go in advance before Yehowah to make his ways ready**. (**Luke 1:76**)

[Question] What had been prophesied about John the Baptist by the angel before his birth?

- 9• Just as it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet: Listen! Someone is crying out in the wilderness, Prepare the way of Yehowah, you people, make his roads straight. (**Luke 3:4**)

[Question] What did Isaiah say that this one would do before his God?

Matthew 3:4• But this very John had his clothing of camel's hair, and a leather girdle¹ around his loins. His food, too, was insect locusts and wild honey.

Footnote: Or, belt

1• John was not a pretentious figure, being rough cut, wearing clothing of camel's hair and a leather girdle around his loins. He ate insect locusts and wild honey for food to survive, and had no material possessions whatsoever. People who came out to see him, came, because he was a prophet, and he spoke God's message in truth.

[Question] What kind of a man was John the Baptist, and how did he live?

[Question] Why then, did people seek him out?

2• So they said to him; A man possessing a hair garment, with a leather belt girded about his loins. Immediately he said; It was Elijah the Tishbite. (2 Kings 1:8)

[Question] What was the customary dress for prophets of God in ancient times?

3• Now John was clothed with camel's hair, and with a leather girdle around his loins, and was eating insect locusts and wild honey. (Mark 1:6)

[Question] How did John the Baptist dress similarly, and what did he eat?

4• These are the ones of them you may eat of. The migratory locust according to its kind, and the edible locust after its kind, and the cricket according to its kind, and the grasshopper according to its kind. (Leviticus 11:22)

[Question] What kinds of foods were considered edible under the Law Covenant of Moses?

5• As for Jonathan, he had not been listening when his father put the people under an oath, so he stretched out the tip of the rod that was in his hand and dipped it into the honeycomb and drew his hand back to his mouth, and his eyes began to beam. (1 Samuel 14:27)

[Question] What was it natural to eat, if one found a nest?

6• My son, eat honey, for it is good, and let sweet comb honey be upon your palate. (Proverbs 24:13)

[Question] What does the Proverb recommend as a fine food?

7• So Israel their father said to them; If, then, that is the case, do this. Take the finest products of the land in your receptacles and carry them down to the man as a gift. Take a little balsam, and a little honey, labdanum and

resinous bark, pistachio nuts and almonds. (**Genesis 43:11**)

[Question] What was among the finest gifts of the land, that Jacob sent down to Joseph as a gift?

- 8• Now after a while he went on back to take her home. Meantime he turned aside to look at the carcass of the lion, and there, there was a swarm of bees in the lion's corpse, and honey. (**Judges 14:8**)

[Question] What did Sampson find in the carcass of a lion?

- 9• When the people came into the woods, why, look! There was a dripping of honey, but there was no one putting his hand to his mouth, because the people were afraid of the oath. (**1 Samuel 14:26**)

[Question] Why did the people in Saul's day, refuse to eat the honey?

- 10• After that he picked up the official garment of Elijah that had fallen off him, and went back and stood by the shore of the Jordan. (**2 Kings 2:13**)

[Question] What kind of a garment did the ancient prophets wear to identify them?

- 11• And it must occur in that day, that the prophets will become ashamed, each one of his vision when he prophesies, and they will not wear an official garment of hair, for the purpose of deceiving. (**Zechariah 13:4**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise, that he would make the false prophets stop wearing, because they prophesied in falsehood?

- 12• Correspondingly, John the Baptist has come neither eating bread nor drinking wine, but you say; He has a demon. (**Luke 7:33**)

[Question] What complaint did the people of Israel make about John the Baptist, despite his conservative ways?

Matthew 3:5• Then Jerusalem¹ and all Judea and all the country around the Jordan made their way out to him.

Footnote: Meaning Possession [or, Foundation] of Twofold Peace Greek, l-e-ro-so'ly-ma; J22(Hebrew), Yeru-sha-la'yim

- 1• Since John the Baptist preached in the wilderness, people from the population centers around Judea had to travel out there

into the wilderness to see him and hear his message. Large crowds therefore came forth to see him, and to hear his message.

[Question] Where did John the Baptist preach, and so, why did people go out to see him?

- 2• While these were on their way, Jesus started to say to the crowds respecting John; What did you go out into the wilderness to behold? A reed being tossed by a wind? (Matthew 11:7)**

[Question] How did Jesus show, that people did not go out of their way, just to view the scenery in the wilderness?

- 3• But dare we say; From men? They were in fear of the crowd, for these all held that John had really been a prophet. (Mark 11:32)**

[Question] How did the common people view John the Baptist, and how did the Pharisees and scribes view him?

- 4• That man was a burning and shining lamp, and you for a short time, were willing to rejoice greatly in his light. (John 5:35)**

[Question] What did Jesus Christ himself, describe John the Baptist as, before the people of Israel?

Matthew 3:6•• And people were baptized by him in the Jordan River, openly confessing their sins.

- 1• Evidently he focused his preaching in the vicinity of the Jordan River where necessary water would be available to survive on and for baptism. There also he baptized people who came forward seeking forgiveness, and John's baptism symbolized their heartfelt repentance. People coming to him then would openly, before all present, confess their sins, which is what Yehowah God wants all sinful men to do before him.**

[Question] Where did John the Baptist focus his activity, and why there?

- 2• Consequently all the territory of Judea and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem made their way out to him, and they were baptized by him in the Jordan River, openly confessing their sins. (Mark 1:5)**

[Question] Who were among those who heard his message?

[Question] How did many respond to his preaching efforts?

- 3• In the course of those days Jesus came from Nazareth of Galilee, and was baptized in the Jordan by John. (**Mark 1:9**)

[Question] Who also came forth to John the Baptist, to be baptized by him?

- 4• My sin I finally confessed to you, and my error I did not cover. I said; I shall make confession over my transgressions to Yehowah. And you yourself pardoned the error of my sins. (**Psalms 32:5**)

[Question] What did the Psalmist confess openly before his God?

- 5• And all the people and the tax collectors, when they heard this, declared God to be righteous, they having been baptized with the baptism of John. (**Luke 7:29**)

[Question] What did those accepting John the Baptist's witness, say about God?

- 6• These things took place in Bethany across the Jordan, where John was baptizing. (**John 1:28**)

[Question] Where in Israel did John the Baptist's work primarily take place?

- 7• But John also was baptizing in Aenon near Salim, because there was a great quantity of water there, and people kept coming and being baptized. (**John 3:23**)

[Question] Where was a second location, that John the Baptist used, and why?

- 8• And many of those who had become believers would come and confess and report their practices openly. (**Acts of Apostles 19:18**)

[Question] What would the ones who believed John the Baptist's message, do upon becoming believers?

- 9• Therefore openly confess your sins to one another, and pray for one another, that you may get healed. A righteous man's supplication, when it is at work, has much force. (**James 5:16**)

[Question] What counsel does James give anointed Christians, so that they might be healed by God?

[Question] Does prayer for another Christian help?

Matthew 3:7 When he caught sight of many of the Pharisees and Sadducees coming to the baptism, he said to them; You offspring of vipers, who has intimated to you to flee from the coming wrath?

1• John though, was not easily fooled, for when the Scribes and Pharisees coming out of Jerusalem came to him, he confronted them face to face. He called them offspring of vipers, or snakes, therefore lowly creatures. He intimated, that they were sons of the great serpent, Satan the Devil.

[Question] How did John the Baptist feel about men who were hypocritical, and did not demonstrate true repentance?

[Question] What did he call all such ones, and what did this infer about them?

2• They had the truth and were well versed in the Law Covenant and its tenets and principles, but they did not live by it. John asked them pointedly; Who has told you how to flee from the coming wrath?

[Question] Why can we say that these men were hypocritical?

[Question] What did John the Baptist say, that they could not escape without true repentance?

3• In effect John was telling them, that God knew their hearts and that unless true repentance was forthcoming, there was no way to flee the judgment resting upon them, for not keeping the Law Covenant.

[Question] What in effect was John the Baptist telling the Pharisees and scribes about their service to God?

4• Now Sadducees came to him, who say there is no resurrection, and they put the question to him. (**Mark 12:18**)

[Question] How did the party of the Sadducees feel about the clear teaching of the Bible concerning the resurrection?

5• But the Pharisees and those versed in the Law disregarded the counsel of God to them, they not having been baptized by him. (**Luke 7:30**)

[Question] How did the Pharisees, and those versed in the Law, respond to John the Baptist's teachings?

6• The venom of theirs is like the venom of the serpent, deaf like the cobra that stops up its ear. (**Psalms 58:4**)

[Question] What are the words of men like the Pharisees, likened to?

- 7• Offspring of vipers, how can you speak good things, when you are wicked? For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks. (Matthew 12:34)**

[Question] Where did Jesus state, that our words come forth from?

[Question] How did he thus condemn the Pharisees and scribes?

- 8• Serpents, offspring of vipers, how are you to flee from the judgment of Gehenna? (Matthew 23:33)**

[Question] What did Jesus himself call such men, and what judgment of God could they not escape?

- 9• Therefore he began to say to the crowds coming out to be baptized by him; You offspring of vipers, who has intimated to you to flee from the coming wrath? (Luke 3:7)**

[Question] How did John the Baptist feel, when he saw self-righteous men coming to the baptism, who had not come to repentance before God?

- 10• Woe to the pregnant women and the ones suckling a baby in those days! For there will be great necessity upon the land, and wrath on this people. (Luke 21:23)**

[Question] What was coming upon Israel from their God, due to their failure to come to repentance before him?

- 11• But according to your hardness and unrepentant heart, you are storing up wrath for yourself on the day of wrath, and of the revealing of God's righteous judgment. (Romans 2:5)**

[Question] What are people with hard hearts storing up for themselves on judgment day?

- 12• Because the great day of their wrath has come, and who is able to stand? (Revelation 6:17)**

[Question] Will any man be able to stand on his own merit before God in God's great day of judgment?

- 13• The eggs of a poisonous snake are what they have hatched, and they kept weaving the mere cobweb of a spider. Anyone eating some of their eggs would die, and the egg that was smashed would be hatched into a viper. (Isaiah 59:5)**

[Question] How did Isaiah prophetically describe, the deeds of such men?

- 14• And, on the other hand, I myself have become full of power, with the spirit of Yehowah, and of justice and mightiness, in order to tell to Jacob his revolt and to Israel his sin. (Micah 3:8)

[Question] How did Micah express the indignation of God toward his covenant people?

- 15• And he came down with them, and took his station on a level place, and there was a great crowd of his disciples, and a great multitude of people from all of Judea and Jerusalem and the maritime country of Tyre and Sidon, who came to hear him, and be healed of their sicknesses. (Luke 6:17)

[Question] When Jesus taught, who were among those who listened to his message?

Matthew 3:8• So then produce fruit that befits repentance.¹

Footnote: Literally, change of mind Greek, *me-ta-noi'as*

- 1• They needed to produce works of repentance, a fruitage that would prove to God, that they really were repentant. True repentance always means a turning away from the wrong practices, and a heartfelt sorrow over having done them. No sacrifice is meaningful, unless the wrong practice has already been stopped.

[Question] It is one thing to say that one is repentant, but what is required in God's eyes?

[Question] When are sacrifices meaningless to Yehowah God?

- 2• But both to those in Damascus first and to those in Jerusalem, and over all the country of Judea, and to the nations I went bringing the message that they should repent and turn to God, **by doing works that befit repentance.** (Acts of Apostles 26:20)

[Question] What message did Paul and the other apostles teach in the First Century C.E?

- 3• And he proceeded to remove the foreign gods and the idol image from the house of Yehowah and all the altars that he had built in the mountain of the house of Yehowah, and in Jerusalem, and then had them thrown outside the city. (2 Chronicles 33:15)

[Question] What things did Manasseh do to show his heartfelt repentance before his God?

- 4• Therefore, O king, may my counsel seem good to you, and remove your own sins by righteousness, and your iniquity, by showing mercy to the poor ones. Maybe there will occur a lengthening of your prosperity. (**Daniel 4:27**)

[Question] How did Daniel counsel Nebuchadnezzar to come to repentance with works showing this?

- 5• And let them cover themselves with sackcloth, man and domestic animal. Let them call out to God with strength and come back, each one from his bad way and from the violence that was in their hands. (**Jonah 3:8**)

[Question] What does God expect from men who are truly repentant?

- 6• Therefore produce fruits that befit repentance. And do not start saying within yourselves; As a father we have Abraham. For I say to you that God has power to raise up children to Abraham from these stones. (**Luke 3:8**)

[Question] What fruits did those men need to produce?

[Question] What though, did they want to fall back upon?

- 7• For, look! This very thing, your being saddened in a godly way, what a great earnestness it produced in you, yes, clearing of yourselves, yes, indignation, yes, fear, yes, longing, yes, zeal, yes, righting of the wrong! In every respect you demonstrated yourselves to be chaste in this matter. (**2 Corinthians 7:11**)

[Question] How did the men in Corinth Greece react to Paul's strong counsel, regarding one of their members committing fornication?

- 8• Therefore, continue mindful of how you have received and how you heard, and go on keeping it, and repent. Certainly unless you wake up, I shall come as a thief, and you will not know at all at what hour I shall come upon you. (**Revelation 3:3**)

[Question] How did Jesus state, that he would come upon those who continued in a course of sin, and refused to repent?

Matthew 3:9•• And do not presume to say to yourselves; As a father we have Abraham. For I say to you, that God is able to raise up children to Abraham from these stones.

- 1• These men were believing, that just because they were the fleshly offspring of the righteous man Abraham, that they could

live as they pleased, disregarding God's righteous principles and tenets within the Law Covenant.

[Question] What did the Jews then believe, because they were the fleshly children of Abraham?

2· John then reminded them, that Yehowah God raised up a seed to Abraham miraculously the first time, when he was childless, and he could do it again, if they failed to live righteously. Nothing was impossible for Yehowah, he could even make stones into righteous men. This also referred to their own hard hearts, which if they refused to change them, could be replaced with others who were willing to change to please God.

[Question] What though, did John the Baptist remind them of?

[Question] What then, would Yehowah God do to replace them, if their hearts remained hard as stone toward him?

3· They replied to him; We are Abraham's offspring and never have we been slaves to anybody. How is it you say; You will become free? (John 8:33)

[Question] How did the Jews show, that they did not get Jesus' teachings?

4· In answer they said to him; Our father is Abraham. Jesus said to them; If you are Abraham's children, do the works of Abraham. (John 8:39)

[Question] When the Jews said that they were Abraham's children, what then did he tell them, that they must do in imitation of Abraham?

5· And a father of circumcised offspring, not only to those who adhere to circumcision, but also to those who walk orderly in the footsteps of that faith, while in the uncircumcised state which our father Abraham had. (Romans 4:12)

[Question] Who really constitute those, who walk like Abraham walked?

6· So he continued; I am surely going to return to you next year at this time, and, look! Sarah your wife will have a son. Now Sarah was listening at the tent entrance, and it was behind the man. (Genesis 18:10)

[Question] How did Abraham exercise faith in the coming seed, and Sarah also?

7· O you seed of Abraham his servant, you sons of Jacob, his chosen ones. (Psalms 105:6)

[Question] Who then, are really the seed of Abraham, the fleshly offspring or those who imitate his faith and fine works?

- 8• Son of man, the inhabitants of these devastated places are saying even concerning the soil of Israel; Abraham happened to be just one and yet he took possession of the land. And we are many. To us the land has been given as something to possess. (Ezekiel 33:24)**

[Question] How did the wicked Jews view God's counsel unrealistically, because they were Abraham's fleshly seed?

- 9• And he must keep the covenant in force for the many for one week. At the half of the week he will cause sacrifice and gift offering to cease. And upon the wing of disgusting things there will be the one causing desolation. Until an extermination, the very thing decided upon will go pouring out also, upon the one lying desolate. (Daniel 9:27)**

[Question] What did the prophecy of Daniel state would end at the half of the seventieth week of years, and what would it all end in?

- 10• So he called and said; Father Abraham, have mercy on me and send Lazarus to dip the tip of his finger in water and cool my tongue, because I am in anguish in this blazing fire. (Luke 16:24)**

[Question] What message of destruction did the Pharisees and scribes want John the Baptist's and Jesus' disciples, to tone down for them?

- 11• But in reply he said; I tell you, if these remained silent, the stones would cry out. (Luke 19:40)**

[Question] Who did Jesus state would witness to these events, if his disciples had failed to do so?

Matthew 3:10• Already, the ax is lying at the root of the trees. Every tree, then, that does not produce fine fruit, is to be cut down, and thrown into the fire.

- 1• John now alludes to the day of judgment from God, a day that is fast approaching. He shows that Yehowah God, the great cultivator who oversees the orchard or vineyard of his people, has been looking for fine fruitage from these ones, but not finding any.**

[Question] What does John the Baptist allude to, by his illustration of the ax and the fruit bearing tree?

2• He is therefore prepared with his ax in hand to cut down all these unfruitful trees, and plant new ones. John then shows that every tree that does not produce fine fruit, will be cut down by Yehowah God, and will be thrown into the fire of his indignation, in complete destruction.

[Question] Where then, did the Jews stand before their God, and what was about to happen to their treelike organization?

[Question] Will Yehowah God then allow any organization to continue, that does not produce fine spiritual fruitage?

3• Indeed, the ax is already in position at the root of the trees, every tree, therefore, not producing fine fruit, is to be cut down and thrown into the fire. (Luke 3:9)

[Question] Where then, was the symbolic ax in regard to the tree Israel?

[Question] Why then, would Yehowah God cut the tree down?

4• Every tree not producing fine fruit gets cut down, and thrown into the fire. (Matthew 7:19)

[Question] What did Jesus state would happen, to every tree not producing fine fruit?

5• Then he went on to tell this illustration. A certain man had a fig tree planted in his vineyard, and he came looking for fruit on it, but found none. (Luke 13:6)

[Question] What illustration did Jesus give telling us the same things about this treelike organization of Israel?

6• If anyone does not remain in union with me, he is cast out as a branch and is dried up. Men gather those branches up and pitch them into the fire, and they are burned. (John 15:6)

[Question] What happens to anyone not remaining in union with Christ?

[Question] Where then, do those dried up branches get thrown, to what end?

7• The womb will forget him, the maggot will sweetly suck him, they will be remembered no more. And unrighteousness will be broken, just like a tree. (Job 24:20)

[Question] What did faithful Job state about the unrighteous ones?

8• And there will still be in it a tenth, and it must again become something for burning down, like a big tree and like a massive tree in which, when there is a cutting down of

them, there is a stump. A holy seed will be the stump of it. (Isaiah 6:13)

[Question] Though Yehowah God would cause a destruction of the treelike organization, what would remain?

- 9• When her sprigs have dried up, women coming in will break them off, lighting them up. For it is not a people of keen understanding. That is why its Maker will show it no mercy, and its own Former will show it no favor. (Isaiah 27:11)

[Question] What did Yehowah God show that his people were like, and so how would they be treated?

- 10• A luxuriant olive tree, pretty with fruit and in form, is what Yehowah has called your name. With sound of the great roaring, he has set a fire blazing against her, and they have broken its branches. (Jeremiah 11:16)

[Question] Though once likened to a productive olive tree, what would happen to Israel at God's own hand?

- 11• Then great crowds approached him, having along with them people that were lame, maimed, blind, dumb, and many otherwise, and they fairly threw them at his feet, and he cured them. (Matthew 15:30)

[Question] How did Jesus treat those who came to him in droves to be healed?

- 12• And he caught sight of a fig tree by the road and went to it, but he found nothing on it except leaves only, and he said to it; Let no fruit come from you anymore forever. And the fig tree withered instantly. (Matthew 21:19)

[Question] How did Jesus symbolically show, that he came to Israel seeking fine fruitage, but upon examination found none?

Matthew 3:11• I, for my part, baptize¹ you with water because of your repentance, but the one coming after me is stronger than I am, whose sandals I am not fit to take off. That one will baptize you people with Holy Spirit² and with fire.

Footnote: Or, immerse; dip Greek, *ba-pti'zo*

Footnote: Or, active force Greek, *pneu'ma-ti*; Latin, *spi'ri-tu*; J^{17, 18, 22}(Hebrew), *beru'ach*, with active force See (Genesis 1:2) Footnote Force

- 1• John the Baptist then showed that he baptized in water in symbol of repentance, yet he was just a forerunner of another

stronger one who was coming after him. He himself, though a holy prophet of God, was not fit to take off this coming one's sandals, thus showing the relative greatness of this coming one. This coming one was Jesus Christ!

[Question] How did John the Baptist show, that he baptized?

[Question] Who though, did he state was coming after him, and how strong was this one relatively?

2• John then states, that this coming one, will baptize them with Holy Spirit and fire. This showed, that their repentance had to be true, because the Holy Spirit would not tolerate any untruth or hypocrisy within them. Also they would be tested out as by fire through fiery trials and persecution, thus proving themselves, as by fire.

[Question] How did John the Baptist show how Jesus, the coming one, would baptize?

[Question] Why then, did their repentance have to be true, and from the heart?

[Question] How would their testing by fire progress?

3• Even I did not know him, but the very One who sent me to baptize in water said to me; Whoever it is upon whom you see the spirit coming down and remaining, this is the one that baptizes in Holy Spirit. ([John 1:33](#))

[Question] What has the Holy Spirit told John the Baptist about the coming one, and how to identify him?

4• Because John, indeed, baptized with water, but you will be baptized in Holy Spirit not many days after this. ([Acts of Apostles 1:5](#))

[Question] What did Jesus say to his waiting disciple, as one of the last things he spoke to them?

5• At this I called to mind the saying of the Lord, how he used to say, John, for his part, baptized with water, but you will be baptized in Holy Spirit. ([Acts of Apostles 11:16](#))

[Question] What did Peter realize when the Holy Spirit fell upon Cornelius, and those gathered together with him?

6• After John, in advance of the entry of that One, had preached publicly to all the people of Israel, baptism, in symbol of repentance. ([Acts of Apostles 13:24](#))

[Question] What message did John the Baptist preach in advance of the coming Messiah?

- 7• Paul said; John baptized with the baptism in symbol of repentance, telling the people to believe in the one coming after him, that is, in Jesus. ([Acts of Apostles 19:4](#))

[Question] Whom did John the Baptist point people toward, through his own ministry?

- 8• And said to him; Are you the Coming One, or are we to expect a different one? ([Matthew 11:3](#))

[Question] How did John the Baptist try to ascertain from Jesus himself, if he was the promised seed?

- 9• John bore witness about him, yes, he actually cried out, this was the one who said it, saying; The one coming behind me has advanced in front of me, because he existed before me. ([John 1:15](#))

[Question] What did John the Baptist bear witness to, about Jesus and his coming ministry?

- 10• And he would preach, saying; After me someone stronger than I am is coming. I am not fit to stoop and untie the laces of his sandals. ([Mark 1:7](#))

[Question] How did John the Baptist describe the coming one, the Messiah?

- 11• The one coming behind me, but the lace of whose sandal, I am not worthy to untie. ([John 1:27](#))

[Question] How did John the Baptist feel about this coming one?

- 12• But as John was fulfilling his course, he would say; What do you suppose I am? I am not he. But, look! One is coming after me the sandals of whose feet I am not worthy to untie. ([Acts of Apostles 13:25](#))

[Question] What did John the Baptist testify to, about the coming one, the Messiah?

- 13• Even I did not know him, but the very One who sent me to baptize in water said to me; Whoever it is upon whom you see the spirit coming down and remaining, this is the one that baptizes in Holy Spirit. ([John 1:33](#))

[Question] How did the Holy Spirit identify to John the Baptist, that Jesus was the Christ?

- 14• And they all became filled with Holy Spirit and started to speak with different tongues, just as the spirit was granting them to make utterance. ([Acts of Apostles 2:4](#))

[Question] What happened on the day of Pentecost, when the Holy Spirit baptized many of Jesus' disciples gathered together in Jerusalem?

- 15• For truly by one spirit we were all baptized into one body, whether Jews or Greeks, whether slaves or free, and we were all made to drink one spirit. (1 Corinthians 12:13)**

[Question] How is Christian unity maintained, for what one drink do all partake of?

- 16• John gave the answer, saying to all; I, for my part, baptize you with water, but the one stronger than I am is coming, the lace of whose sandals I am not fit to untie. He will baptize you people with Holy Spirit and fire. (Luke 3:16)**

[Question] Though John the Baptist baptized in water, what did Jesus, the coming one, baptize with?

- 17• So how is it that this privilege is mine, to have the mother of my Lord come to me? (Luke 1:43)**

[Question] How did Elizabeth feel when Mary came to visit her, and what did she say under inspiration?

- 18• So John summoned a certain two of his disciples and sent them to the Lord to say; Are you the Coming One, or are we to expect a different one? (Luke 7:19)**

[Question] How did John the Baptist, from prison, try to ask Jesus, if he was in fact the Messiah?

- 19• This man came for a witness, in order to bear witness about the light, that people of all sorts might believe through him. (John 1:7)**

[Question] What was it the role of John the Baptist, to bear witness to?

- 20• Jesus answered; Most truly I say to you, unless anyone is born from water and spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. (John 3:5)**

[Question] What did Jesus Christ state, that a man must be born from, to enter into the Kingdom of God?

- 21• He that comes from above is over all others. He that is from the earth is from the earth, and speaks of things of the earth. He that comes from heaven is over all others. (John 3:31)**

[Question] Where did Jesus Christ come forth from, and how did this put him above others?

[Question] What kinds of things then did Jesus speak?

22· Can anyone forbid water, so that these might not be baptized, who have received the Holy Spirit, even as we have? (Acts of Apostles 10:47)

[Question] What should Christians do after receiving the Holy Spirit through their faith?

Matthew 3:12· His winnowing shovel is in his hand, and he will completely clean up his threshing floor, and will gather his wheat into the storehouse, but the chaff he will burn up with fire, that cannot be put out.

1· Still speaking about this coming one who was so great, John shows, that like a man gathering in the fine fruitage of his harvest, he would come with his winnowing shovel in his hand, and then use it to make a clean gathering of all the righteous fruitage on his threshing floor.

[Question] How did John the Baptist illustrate, how Jesus would gather together all the fruit of the Israelite system of things, bringing it to a finish?

2· Then those who were like wheat would be gathered into his storehouse, and those designated as worthless chaff, he would burn up with a fire that could not be extinguished. Thus he showed that the Christ would separate peoples one from another, based upon their spiritual fruitfulness, and those lacking good fruits spiritually, would be destroyed completely.

[Question] When a harvester does this work, what becomes of the chaff from the threshing floor?

[Question] What spiritual work then, did this indicate was in progress for the Israelite system of things?

3· Let both grow together until the harvest, and in the harvest season I will tell the reapers; First, collect the weeds and bind them in bundles to burn them up, then go to gathering the wheat into my storehouse. (Matthew 13:30)

[Question] How did Jesus also indicate, that a similar work would progress with Christendom?

[Question] Who then, would do the gathering together, and where would the wheat be gathered to?

4· And I shall winnow them with a fork in the gates of the land. I shall certainly bereave them of children. I will destroy my people, since they have not turned back from their own ways. (Jeremiah 15:7)

[Question] How did Yehowah God state to Jeremiah, how he would separate out the good from the worthless ones, among his people Israel?

- 5• **For, look! The day is coming that is burning like the furnace, and all the presumptuous ones and all those doing wickedness must become as stubble. And the day that is coming will certainly devour them, Yehowah of armies has said, so that it will not leave to them, either root or bough. (Malachi 4:1)**

[Question] What did Malachi state would happen to the presumptuous and wicked ones during Yehowah's day of judgment?

[Question] What would this judgment day not leave to them in the earth?

- 6• **His winnowing shovel is in his hand to clean up his threshing floor completely, and to gather the wheat into his storehouse, but the chaff he will burn up with fire that cannot be put out. (Luke 3:17)**

[Question] How did John the Baptist indicate through an illustration, that the Israelite system of things was then in its harvest period?

[Question] What would happen to the ones that were like wheat, and like chaff spiritually?

- 7• **Then they came to the threshing floor of Atad, which is in the region of the Jordan, and there they carried on a very great and heavy wailing and he kept up the mourning rites for his father seven days. (Genesis 50:10)**

[Question] Where did the mourning for Jacob take place?

- 8• **Do they become like straw before a wind, and like chaff that a storm wind has stolen away? (Job 21:18)**

[Question] What did Job liken the wicked ones to?

- 9• **The wicked are not like that, but are like the chaff that the wind drives away. (Psalms 1:4)**

[Question] What did the Psalmist liken the wicked ones to?

- 10• **May they become like chaff before the wind, and let Yehowah's angel be pushing them along. (Psalms 35:5)**

[Question] What are the wicked ones like to Yehowah God, and what wind will drive them away?

- 11• **O my God, make them like a thistle whirl, like stubble before a wind. (Psalms 83:13)**

[Question] What did the Psalmist ask God to do with the wicked ones, and what did he compare them to?

- 12· When Yehowah will have washed away the excrement of the daughters of Zion and he will rinse away even the bloodshed of Jerusalem from within her by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning down. (Isaiah 4:4)**

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise to wash away from his people, and how?

- 13· O my threshed ones and the son of my threshing floor, what I have heard from Yehowah of armies, the God of Israel, I have reported to you people. (Isaiah 21:10)**

[Question] How did Yehowah God liken his people to the product of the harvest upon the threshing floor?

- 14· And the cattle and the full-grown asses cultivating the ground will eat fodder seasoned with sorrel, which was winnowed with the shovel and with the fork. (Isaiah 30:24)**

[Question] What was sign of abundant harvests and plentiful times within Israel?

- 15· Look! I have made you a threshing sledge, a new threshing instrument having double-edged teeth. You will tread down the mountains and crush them. The hills you will make just like the chaff. (Isaiah 41:15)**

[Question] What did Yehowah God liken his son to, among his people?

[Question] What also would become of the hills and mountains, the governments, under his threshing work?

- 16· And they will actually go forth and look upon the carcasses of the men that were transgressing against me. For the very worms upon them will not die, and their fire itself will not be extinguished, and they must become something repulsive to all flesh. (Isaiah 66:24)**

[Question] What would happen to all those Yehowah God destroys in his great judgment day?

- 17· And I will send to Babylon winnowers who will certainly winnow her, and who will make her land empty. For they will actually prove to be against her on all sides in the day of calamity. (Jeremiah 51:2)**

[Question] What, and how, did Yehowah promise to effect his judgments against Babylon?

- 18• And I will clean out from you the revolvers and the transgressors against me, for out of the land of their alien residence I shall bring them forth, but onto the soil of Israel they will not come. You people will have to know that I am Yehowah. (Ezekiel 20:38)**

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise to clear out from among his people?

- 19• And you must say to the forest of the south; Hear the word of Yehowah. This is what the Sovereign Lord Yehowah has said; Here I am setting a fire ablaze against you, and it must devour in you every still-moist tree and every dry tree. The kindling flame will not be extinguished, and by it all faces must be scorched from the south to the north. (Ezekiel 20:47)**

[Question] What would Yehowah God set ablaze among his people, and who would be affected?

Matthew 3:13•• Then Jesus came from Galilee, to the Jordan, to John, in order to be baptized by him.

- 1• While this work of John the Baptist was ongoing Jesus himself came to John to be baptized. This began the work of this last and greatest one of all of Yehowah God's prophets toward his chosen people, Israel.**

[Question] While John the Baptist was thus preaching, who came forth to him to be baptized?

- 2• In the course of those days Jesus came from Nazareth of Galilee and was baptized in the Jordan by John. (Mark 1:9)**

[Question] What event happened, while John the Baptist was preaching in the wilderness?

- 3• Now when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized and, as he was praying, the heaven was opened up. (Luke 3:21)**

[Question] What happened to Jesus after he was baptized, and what did others see then?

- 4• And from the tribe of Naphtali, Kedesh in Galilee with its pasture grounds and Hammon with its pasture grounds and Kiriathaim with its pasture grounds. (1 Chronicles 6:76)**

[Question] What tribal inheritance was the land Jesus came forth from, apportioned to in Israel?

- 5• Just as it is written in Yehowah's Law: Every male opening a womb must be called holy to Yehowah. (**Luke 2:23**)

[Question] What was every male opening a womb in Israel?

- 6• Starting with his baptism by John and until the day he was received up from us, one of these men should become a witness with us of his resurrection. (**Acts of Apostles 1:22**)

[Question] Who was later selected because he had been with Jesus since the beginning of his ministry to Israel, at his baptism by John the Baptist?

- 7• This is he that came by means of water and blood, Jesus Christ, not with the water only, but with the water and with the blood. And the spirit is that which is bearing witness, because the spirit is the truth. (**1 John 5:6**)

[Question] How did Jesus come with the water as John duly notes?

Matthew 3:14•• But the latter tried to prevent him, saying; I am the one needing to be baptized by you, and are you coming to me?

- 1• John recognized the relative greatness of Jesus, showing that he knew that he himself was sinful, and was the one needing to be baptized by Jesus, and not the other way around.

[Question] How did John the Baptist respond when his cousin Jesus came to him to be baptized?

Matthew 3:15•• In reply Jesus said to him; **Let it be, this time, for in that way it is suitable for us to carry out all that is righteous.** Then he quit preventing him.

- 1• Jesus then told John the Baptist that this is the manner in which all that is righteous must be accomplished. He told him to stop preventing him, for this is how all must begin on a course of righteousness before their God, Yehowah. Therefore John acquiesced.

[Question] What did Jesus then say to John, and so what then progressed?

- 2• There are seventy weeks that have been determined upon your people and upon your holy city, **in order to terminate the transgression, and to finish off sin, and to make**

atonement for error, and to bring in righteousness for times indefinite, and to imprint a seal upon vision and prophet, and to anoint the Holy of Holies. (Daniel 9:24)

[Question] What prophecy in Daniel foretold accurately the time for the coming of the Messiah to Israel?

- 3• Do not think I came to destroy the Law or the Prophets. I came, not to destroy, but to fulfill. (Matthew 5:17)**

[Question] Did Jesus Christ come forth to destroy the Law Covenant or the Prophets?

- 4• Then he actually says; Look! I am come to do your will. He does away with what is first, that he may establish what is second. (Hebrews 10:9)**

[Question] What did Jesus Christ come forth to accomplish?

- 5• You have loved righteousness and you hate wickedness. That is why God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of exultation more than your partners. (Psalms 45:7)**

[Question] Why did Yehowah God anoint his Son with the oil of exultation, his Holy Spirit, more than any others?

- 6• Make the heart of this people unreceptive, and make their very ears unresponsive, and paste their very eyes together, that they may not see with their eyes and with their ears they may not hear, and that their own heart may not understand, and that they may not actually turn back and get healing for themselves. (Isaiah 6:10)**

[Question] What had Isaiah prophesied would take place with Yehowah God's people, even though they heard his words often?

- 7• And all the people and the tax collectors, when they heard this, declared God to be righteous, they having been baptized with the baptism of John. (Luke 7:29)**

[Question] How did the people respond to the teachings of Jesus Christ?

Matthew 3:16•• After being baptized Jesus immediately came up from the water, and look! The heavens were opened up, and he saw descending like a dove God's spirit coming upon him.

- 1• Jesus was then baptized in the Jordan River being completely immersed in its waters. Immediately upon coming up from the Jordan's waters, the heavens were opened up, and God's Holy**

Spirit, in the shape of a dove, came and rested upon him. John, Jesus and many others there, all saw this.

[Question] What things happened to Jesus Christ immediately after being baptized, and who saw these things?

2• This symbolic opening of the heavens visibly showed that understanding of Jesus' past life in heaven was now being transferred to him, and he would now understand his past life in heaven and all that had come before, for this was now opened to him. God's spirit showed all those present, that he was the anointed one of God. The dove being a symbol of the peacefulness which is representative of the Holy Spirit.

[Question] What was symbolized by the opening the heavens at Jesus' baptism?

[Question] So before Jesus was baptized, did he have knowledge of his previous life in heaven?

[Question] Why was the dove used, and what did it show to others that they would not normally see?

[Question] What also is the dove a symbol of?

3• Now it came about in the thirtieth year, in the fourth month, on the fifth day of the month, while I was in the midst of the exiled people by the river Chebar, that the heavens were opened, and I began to see visions of God. ([Ezekiel 1:1](#))

[Question] How did Ezekiel witness to similar things he saw?

4• And immediately on coming up out of the water he saw the heavens being parted, and, like a dove, the spirit coming down upon him. ([Mark 1:10](#))

[Question] What did Jesus himself see, when coming up from the waters of baptism?

[Question] What actually was the dove an indicator of?

5• Now when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized and, as he was praying, the heaven was opened up. ([Luke 3:21](#))

[Question] What was Jesus doing after his baptism?

6• And he said; Look! I behold the heavens opened up, and the Son of man standing at God's right hand. ([Acts of Apostles 7:56](#))

[Question] What vision of Yehowah God and his Christ, did Stephen see before his death?

- 7• John also bore witness, saying; I viewed the spirit coming down as a dove out of heaven, and it remained upon him. (John 1:32)**

[Question] What did John the Baptist bear witness to, that he saw following Jesus' baptism?

- 8• And upon him the spirit of Yehowah must settle down, the spirit of wisdom and of understanding, the spirit of counsel and of mightiness, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of Yehowah. (Isaiah 11:2)**

[Question] What had Isaiah prophesied, that would come upon Yehowah's Messiah?

- 9• And the Holy Spirit in bodily shape like a dove came down upon him, and a voice came out of heaven; You are my Son, the beloved. I have approved you. (Luke 3:22)**

[Question] What also was spoken out of the air with a resounding voice, that all heard?

- 10• Yehowah's spirit is upon me, because he anointed me to declare Good News to the poor, he sent me forth to preach a release to the captives, and a recovery of sight to the blind, to send the crushed ones away with a release. (Luke 4:18)**

[Question] How did Jesus Christ later state his commission from God, and what did it entail?

- 11• Namely, Jesus who was from Nazareth, how God anointed him with Holy Spirit and power, and he went through the land doing good and healing all those oppressed by the Devil, because God was with him. (Acts of Apostles 10:38)**

[Question] What was later witnessed to, about the ministry of Jesus Christ?

- 12• The spirit of the Sovereign Lord Yehowah is upon me, for the reason that Yehowah has anointed me to tell Good News to the meek ones. He has sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to those taken captive, and the wide opening of the eyes even to the prisoners. (Isaiah 61:1)**

[Question] Where is the commission of the Messiah set down in prophecy, and who later read from this, as applying to himself personally?

- 13• This is he that came by means of water and blood, Jesus**

Christ. Not with the water only, but with the water and with the blood. And the spirit is that which is bearing witness, because the spirit is the truth. (1 John 5:6)

[Question] What is the Holy Spirit in relation to the truth?

Matthew 3:17 Look! Also, there was a voice from the heavens that said; **This is my Son, the beloved, whom I have approved.**

1• In addition to these two things, a voice came out of the heavens and stated; **This is my Son, the beloved, whom I have approved.** Clearly this one was the coming Messiah, the one approved by Yehowah God.

[Question] What voice was then heard by all those present, and what did the voice from heaven state?

2• Father, glorify your name. Therefore a voice came out of heaven; **I both glorified it, and will glorify it again. (John 12:28)**

[Question] What voice also later responded to Jesus' asking to glorify God's name?

3• And he went on to say; Take, please, your son, your only son whom you so love, Isaac, and make a trip to the land of Moriah and there offer him up as a burnt offering on one of the mountains, that I shall designate to you. (**Genesis 22:2**)

[Question] What symbolic drama was Abraham told to enact with his son Isaac, and what later did this typify regarding Jesus and the Greater than Abraham, Yehowah God?

4• Let me refer to the decree of Yehowah. He has said to me you are my son. I, today, I have become your father. (**Psalms 2:7**)

[Question] What did the Psalms decree regarding this coming one?

5• And a voice came out of the cloud, saying; **This is my Son, the one that has been chosen. Listen to him. (Luke 9:35)**

[Question] What voice was also witnessed to by three of his disciples as coming from heaven?

6• While he was yet speaking, look! A bright cloud overshadowed them, and, look! A voice out of the cloud, saying; **This is my Son, the beloved, whom I have approved. Listen to him. (Matthew 17:5)**

[Question] What voice did Peter, James and John hear, while in the mountain with Jesus Christ?

- 7• **And the Holy Spirit in bodily shape like a dove came down upon him, and a voice came out of heaven; *You are my Son, the beloved. I have approved you.* (Luke 3:22)**

[Question] What voice did all then hear at Jesus' baptism?

- 8• **Look! My servant, on whom I keep fast hold! My chosen one, whom my soul has approved! I have put my spirit in him. Justice to the nations, is what he will bring forth. (Isaiah 42:1)**

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise through Isaiah, to do for his servant?

- 9• **Look! My servant whom I chose, my beloved, whom my soul approved! I will put my spirit upon him, and what justice is he will make clear to the nations. (Matthew 12:18)**

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise prophetically to put upon his servant Jesus?

- 10• **For he received from God the Father honor and glory, when words such as these were borne to him by the magnificent glory; *This is my son, my beloved, whom I myself have approved.* (2 Peter 1:17)**

[Question] What words did Peter bear witness to, that he heard respecting Christ, later in his ministry in the mountain of transfiguration?

- 11• **I myself shall become his father, and he himself will become my son. When he does wrong, I will also reprove him with the rod of men and with the strokes of the sons of Adam. (2 Samuel 7:14)**

[Question] How did Yehowah God prophetically foretell, how he would deal with his Son?

- 12• **Then I came to be beside him as a master worker, and I came to be the one he was especially fond of day by day. I, being glad before him all the time. (Proverbs 8:30)**

[Question] How is the work and life of Jesus Christ in his pre-human existence, described in Proverbs?

- 13• **And his majestic one will certainly come to be from him, and from the midst of him his own ruler will go forth. And I will cause him to come near, and he must approach to me. For who, now, is this one that has given his heart in pledge, in order to approach to me? Is the utterance of**

Yehowah. (Jeremiah 30:21)

[Question] Where was the ruler of Israel, the majestic one, said to come forth from, and why was he selected?

- 14· And there came to be a voice above the expanse that was over their head. When they stood still, they would let their wings down. (**Ezekiel 1:25**)

[Question] From where, did Yehowah God speak, in the vision of Ezekiel?

- 15· And a voice came out of the heavens; **You are my Son, the beloved. I have approved you.** (**Mark 1:11**)

[Question] What voice came forth, and what did it say at Jesus' baptism?

- 16· And a cloud formed, overshadowing them, and a voice came out of the cloud; **This is my Son, the beloved. Listen to him.** (**Mark 9:7**)

[Question] What voice also came forth in the mountain during the transfiguration?

- 17· And I have seen it, and I have borne witness, that this one is the Son of God. (**John 1:34**)

[Question] What did the Apostle John bear witness to, that he himself had seen?

- 18· For the Father has affection for the Son and shows him all the things he himself does, and he will show him works greater than these, in order, that you may marvel. (**John 5:20**)

[Question] How does Yehowah God feel about his son, Jesus Christ, and so what does he empower him to accomplish?

- 19· There is another that bears witness about me, and I know that the witness which he bears about me, is true. (**John 5:32**)

[Question] Who also bore witness to the works of Jesus Christ, besides himself alone?

- 20· Work, not for the food that perishes, but for the food that remains for life everlasting, which the Son of man will give you, for upon this one the Father, even God, has put his seal of approval. (**John 6:27**)

[Question] What food did Jesus Christ encourage all his disciples to work hard for, and why this food?

21· But when the full limit of the time arrived, God sent forth his Son, who came to be out of a woman and who came to be under Law. (Galatians 4:4)

[Question] When, and to whom, was the Son of God born, and what was he under throughout his life?

Matthew Chapter 4

Matthew 4:1 Then Jesus was led by the spirit up into the wilderness to be tempted by the Devil.

1* As soon as Jesus Christ was thus anointed, he was led by the Holy Spirit up into the wilderness to be tested by Satan the Devil. This testing lasted for forty day and forty nights, and during this time he ate nothing.

[Question] Where then was Jesus led, as soon as he was baptized, and what happened then?

2* And Aaron must lay both his hands upon the head of the live goat and confess over it all the errors of the sons of Israel and all their revolts in all their sins, and he must put them upon the head of the goat, and send it away by the hand of a ready man into the wilderness. (Leviticus 16:21)

[Question] How was atonement offered under the Law Covenant to the Israelite nation?

3* And immediately the spirit impelled him to go into the wilderness. (Mark 1:12)

[Question] What impelled Jesus to go into the wilderness of Judea after his baptism?

4* Now Jesus, full of Holy Spirit, turned away from the Jordan, and he was led about by the spirit in the wilderness. (Luke 4:1)

[Question] What was Jesus full of, after his baptism, and where did it then lead him?

5* For we have as High Priest, not one who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has been tested in all respects like ourselves, but without sin. (Hebrews 4:15)

[Question] What kind of a High Priest do anointed Christians have in Jesus?

6* In time, Yehowah's spirit started to impel him in Mahanehdan between Zorah and Eshtaol. (Judges 13:25)

[Question] How did Yehowah's spirit affect the Nazarite, Sampson, in his young manhood?

7* And it is bound to occur that, when I myself go from you, then the spirit of Yehowah itself will carry you away to where I

shall not know, and I shall have come to tell Ahab, and he will not find you, and he will be bound to kill me, as your servant himself has feared Yehowah from his youth. (**1 Kings 18:12**)

[Question] What did the servant of Elijah fear the spirit would do with Elijah?

8• So he continued in the wilderness forty days, being tempted by Satan, and he was with the wild beasts, but the angels were ministering to him. (**Mark 1:13**)

[Question] Where then did Jesus go, and what happened to him there?

9• You are from your father the Devil, and you wish to do the desires of your father. That one, was a manslayer when he began, and he did not stand fast in the truth, because truth is not in him. When he speaks the lie, he speaks according to his own disposition, because he is a liar and the father of the lie. (**John 8:44**)

[Question] What is the very nature of Satan the Devil?

10• So down the great dragon was hurled, the original serpent, the one called Devil and Satan, who is misleading the entire inhabited earth. He was hurled down to the earth, and his angels were hurled down with him. (**Revelation 12:9**)

[Question] Who does the Bible say, is misleading the entire inhabited earth?

[Question] Where has he been hurled down to, during these Last Days?

Matthew 4:2• After he had fasted forty days and forty nights, then he felt hungry.

1• This time of testing involved fasting and prayer. It lasted for forty days and nights, during which time nothing was eaten, much like what had happened to Moses when up in the holy mountain receiving the Ten Commandments on two occasions. Jesus Christ as the mediator of a New Covenant would experience similar things, but the Laws of this New Covenant were written on the heart through Holy Spirit, Gods own finger.

[Question] What took place for Jesus during this time of testing?

[Question] Did Jesus eat anything during this time, and whose experience was this like?

[Question] Why was there a similarity to Moses, and where are the Laws of the New Covenant written, and by what means?

- 2• And he continued there with Yehowah forty days and forty nights. He ate no bread and he drank no water. And he proceeded to write upon the tablets the words of the covenant, the Ten Words. (**Exodus 34:28**)

[Question] Where did Moses go for forty days and night without food, and what did he receive there?

- 3• When I went up the mountain to receive the stone tablets, the tablets of the covenant that Yehowah had concluded with you, and I kept dwelling in the mountain forty days and forty nights, I neither ate bread nor drank water. (**Deuteronomy 9:9**)

[Question] What did Moses himself state about that experience?

- 4• So he rose up and ate and drank, and he kept going in the power of that nourishment for forty days and forty nights, as far as the mountain of the true God, Horeb. (**1 Kings 19:8**)

[Question] What similar experience did Elijah experience?

- 5• So he continued in the wilderness forty days, being tempted by Satan, and he was with the wild beasts, but the angels were ministering to him. (**Mark 1:13**)

[Question] While there in the wilderness, what things happened to Jesus?

- 6• For forty days, while being tempted by the Devil. Furthermore, he ate nothing in those days, and so, when they were concluded, he felt hungry. (**Luke 4:2**)

[Question] How did Jesus Christ feel after forty days without food?

- 7• Then Moses entered into the midst of the cloud and went on up the mountain. And Moses continued in the mountain forty days and forty nights. (**Exodus 24:18**)

[Question] How long did Moses stay up in the holy mountain with Yehowah God?

- 8• So I kept prostrating myself before Yehowah forty days and forty nights, for I prostrated myself thus, because Yehowah talked of annihilating you. (**Deuteronomy 9:25**)

[Question] How did Moses plead for the life of God's people Israel during his stay in the mountain the second forty days?

- 9• **A prophet I shall raise up for them from the midst of their brothers, like you, and I shall indeed put my words in his mouth, and he will certainly speak to them all that I shall command him. (Deuteronomy 18:18)**

[Question] What had even Moses prophesied, that God would raise upon from within Israel for his people?

- 10•• **And in all the different jurisdictional districts, wherever the king's word and his Law were reaching, there was great mourning among the Jews, and fasting and weeping and wailing. Sackcloth and ashes themselves came to be spread out as a couch for many. (Esther 4:3)**

[Question] How did the Jews react to the king's decree in the time of Esther?

- 11• **Go, gather all the Jews that are to be found in Shushan, and fast in my behalf, and neither eat nor drink for three days, night and day. I too with my young women, I shall fast likewise, and upon that I shall come in to the king, which is not according to the law. And in case I must perish, I must perish. (Esther 4:16)**

[Question] How did Esther herself respond to this news, before going in to the king to make her request?

Matthew 4:3•• **Also, the Tempter came and said to him; If you are a son of God, tell these stones to become loaves of bread.**

- 1• **Satan the Devil, knowing that Jesus Christ was hungry to an extreme degree, tempted him, by trying to get Jesus to turn stones into bread. Would Jesus Christ use his God given power to simply care for his own physical needs?**

[Question] What did Satan the Devil try to tempt Jesus with, after thus going without food for forty days and nights?

- 2• **That is why, indeed, when I could bear it no longer, I sent to know of your faithfulness, as perhaps in some way, the Tempter might have tempted you, and our labor might have turned out to be in vain. (1 Thessalonians 3:5)**

[Question] What fear did Paul have, when he had not heard any news from those to whom he preached, and came to love?

- 3• **And saying; O you would-be thrower-down of the temple and builder of it in three days, save yourself! If you are a son of God, come down off the torture stake! (Matthew 27:40)**

[Question] How was Jesus mocked while upon the torture stake, for saying he was a Son of God?

- 4• At this the Devil said to him; If you are a son of God, tell this stone to become a loaf of bread. (**Luke 4:3**)

[Question] What did Satan the Devil tempt Jesus to perform, so as to have something to eat?

- 5• Now it came to be the day when the sons of the true God entered to take their station before Yehowah, and even Satan proceeded to enter right among them. (**Job 1:6**)

[Question] Who came right before Yehowah God, at an assembly Yehowah God held for his angels in heaven?

Matthew 4:4• But in reply he said; It is written: Man must live, not on bread alone, but on every utterance coming forth through Yehowah's¹ mouth.

Footnote: See Appendix 1D

- 1• Jesus' reply, showed his right heart before his God, for he showed that men must live by every utterance coming forth from Yehowah God's mouth. Bread would therefore not truly sustain him, but the doing of Yehowah God's will, would be what truly sustained him.

[Question] How did Jesus' answer show, that he had a right heart before his God and Father?

[Question] What did he thus show, should rightly sustain men?

- 2• So he humbled you, and let you go hungry, and fed you with the manna, which neither you had known, nor your fathers had known. In order to make you know, that not by bread alone does man live, but by every expression of Yehowah's mouth, does man live. (**Deuteronomy 8:3**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God making the Israelites eat manna for forty years in the wilderness, do to them?

[Question] What was this test supposed to prove to them?

- 3• But Jesus replied to him; It is written: Man must not live by bread alone. (**Luke 4:4**)

[Question] What scripture did Jesus then quote, to prove his point to Satan the Devil?

- 4• Jesus said to them; My food is for me to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work. (**John 4:34**)

[Question] What did Jesus Christ later show, was like food for him, because it sustained him?

- 5• **In grassy pastures he makes me lie down, by well-watered resting-places he conducts me. (Psalms 23:2)**

[Question] How did David in the 23rd Psalm, show his own humble dependence upon God in all things?

- 6• **Bless Yehowah, O you angels of his, mighty in power, carrying out his word, by listening to the voice of his word. (Psalms 103:20)**

[Question] Who are among the primary ones, that glorify Yehowah God?

- 7• **That I may answer the one reproaching me with a word, for I have trusted in your word. (Psalms 119:42)**

[Question] How did the Psalmist show, that he loved God's word, and how did it help him?

- 8• **If your Law had not been what I am fond of, then I should have perished in my affliction. (Psalms 119:92)**

[Question] How did the Psalmist show, that he depended upon God's word the Bible always?

- 9• **Look! There are days coming, is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Yehowah, and I will send a famine into the land, a famine, not for bread, and a thirst, not for water, but for hearing the words of Yehowah. (Amos 8:11)**

[Question] What kind of a famine did Yehowah God promise to send forth into Israel?

- 10•• **A few things, though, are needed, or just one. For her part, Mary chose the good portion, and it will not be taken away from her. (Luke 10:42)**

[Question] What good portion did Mary choose, and how was this like Jesus?

- 11• **It is the spirit that is life-giving. The flesh is of no use at all. The sayings that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life. (John 6:63)**

[Question] What in man is life giving?

[Question] What are the sayings of Christ?

- 12• **But the two wings of the great eagle were given the woman, that she might fly into the wilderness to her place. There is where she is fed for a time, and times, and half a time**

away from the face of the serpent. (**Revelation 12:14**)

[Question] Who feeds the woman in (**Revelation Chapter 12**)?

Matthew 4:5 Then the Devil took him along into the holy city, and he stationed him upon the battlement of the temple.

1 Next Satan the Devil took Jesus along and stationed him upon the battlement of the temple in Jerusalem. This high wall surrounded the temple mount, and for one to jump off of it would surely kill him.

[Question] Where then, did the Devil take Jesus, and what did he ask him to do there?

2 Now the princes of the people had their dwelling in Jerusalem, but as for the rest of the people, they cast lots to bring in one out of every ten to dwell in Jerusalem the holy city, and the nine other parts in the other cities. (**Nehemiah 11:1**)

[Question] What was considered a great privilege after the return from exile?

3 Wake up, wake up, put on your strength, O Zion! Put on your beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city! For no more will there come again into you, the uncircumcised and unclean one. (**Isaiah 52:1**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise to Zion his stronghold, for who would no more enter into her, ever again?

4 Now he led him into Jerusalem and stationed him upon the battlement of the temple and said to him; If you are a son of God, hurl yourself down from here. (**Luke 4:9**)

[Question] What did Satan the Devil tempt Jesus to do, from this high battlement?

Matthew 4:6 And said to him; If you are a son of God, hurl yourself down. For it is written: He will give his angels a charge concerning you, and they will carry you on their hands, that you may at no time strike your foot against a stone.

1 Then Satan the Devil tried to trick Jesus Christ, by quoting scripture from the Psalms, that God had prophesied, that he would give his angels a charge concerning his anointed son, to guard him in all his ways. Satan the Devil then told Jesus Christ

to throw himself down, so that Satan the Devil could see this in action. Would the son of God be so easily fooled?

[Question] What scripture did Satan the Devil then quote wrongly to get Jesus, to do as he had asked?

2• Now he led him into Jerusalem and stationed him upon the battlement of the temple and said to him; If you are a son of God, hurl yourself down from here. (**Luke 4:9**)

[Question] What did Satan the Devil invite Jesus to do, to show that he was God's Son?

3• For he will give his own angels a command concerning you, to guard you in all your ways. (**Psalms 91:11**)

[Question] What did the Psalmist promise that God would do for his Messiah?

4• Upon their hands they will carry you, that you may not strike your foot against any stone. (**Psalms 91:12**)

[Question] What was this intended to show regarding his Messiah?

5• For it is written: He will give his angels a charge concerning you, to preserve you. (**Luke 4:10**)

[Question] What did this show, that the charge of the angels was, respecting his Messiah?

6• And; They will carry you on their hands, that you may at no time strike your foot against a stone. (**Luke 4:11**)

[Question] What was then prophesied about the Messiah that the angels of God would do for him if he stumbled?

Matthew 4:7•• Jesus said to him; **Again it is written: You must not put Yehowah¹ your God to the test.**

Footnote: See Appendix 1D

1• Jesus however as the Word, or spokesperson of God, knew his word the Bible well, and he quoted another scripture, which showed that it would be wrong to put Yehowah God to the test, just to see if he was actually there, or would help. Also, this would be a made up test, not one based upon any real need, and so it would simply be a testing of God's will and power, which was wrong, actually a faithless act.

[Question] Was Jesus fooled into doing this before God, why not?

[Question] What did Jesus show, that it was wrong to ask God to do for us?

- 2• You must not put Yehowah your God to the test, the way you put him to the test at Massah. (**Deuteronomy 6:16**)

[Question] Would this kind of action be one of faith, or a lack of faith by putting God to the test?

- 3• In answer Jesus said to him; It is said, you must not put Yehowah your God to the test. (**Luke 4:12**)

[Question] So how did Jesus answer Satan the Devil?

- 4• Neither let us put Yehowah to the test, as some of them put him to the test, only to perish by the serpents. (**1 Corinthians 10:9**)

[Question] What happened to the Israelites who put God to the test in the wilderness by not listening to his approved servants?

- 5• So Peter said to her; Why was it agreed upon between you two to make a test of the spirit of Yehowah? Look! The feet of those who buried your husband are at the door, and they will carry you out. (**Acts of Apostles 5:9**)

[Question] What happened later to Ananias and Sapphira, when they tested the spirit of God?

Matthew 4:8• Again the Devil took him along to an unusually high mountain, and showed him all the kingdoms of the world¹ and their glory.

Footnote: World Greek, κ<σμου (ko'smou); Latin, mun'di

- 1• Satan the Devil though, did not give up, but took Jesus Christ to an elevated location, where he could see all the kingdoms of the world and their glory.

[Question] Did this cause Satan the Devil to give up on Jesus, and stop tempting him?

[Question] Where then, did he now take Jesus, and what did he offer to him from there?

- 2• For what benefit will it be to a man, if he gains the whole world, but forfeits his soul? Or what will a man give in exchange for his soul? (**Matthew 16:26**)

[Question] What can a man take with him in death?

[Question] Can a man give something to God for his life?

- 3• So he brought him up and showed him all the kingdoms of the inhabited earth in an instant of time. (**Luke 4:5**)

[Question] What did Satan the Devil show to Jesus in an instant of time?

- 4• Because everything in the world, the desire of the flesh, and the desire of the eyes, and the showy display of one's means of life, does not originate with the Father, but originates with the world. (1 John 2:16)**

[Question] What things of this world originate with Satan the Devil?

- 5• And the seventh angel blew his trumpet. And loud voices occurred in heaven, saying; The kingdom of the world did become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will rule as king forever and ever. (Revelation 11:15)**

[Question] What will eventually happen to Satan the Devil's Kingdom, and who then, will rule the earth under God's loving hand?

Matthew 4:9• And he said to him; All these things I will give you, if you fall down and do an act of worship to me.

- 1• What was Satan the Devil's purpose in doing this? He wanted Jesus to do just one act of worship to him, and if Jesus would do so, then Satan the Devil would give him authority over all the world of mankind. This showed truthfully that Satan the Devil already had such authority to give to Jesus Christ. He was trying to get the Christ to serve him, and not his heavenly father, Yehowah God.**

[Question] What did Satan the Devil offer to Jesus, and in return for what?

[Question] What then, does this show us today?

- 2• And the Devil said to him; I will give you all this authority and the glory of them, because it has been delivered to me, and to whomever I wish I give it. (Luke 4:6)**

[Question] What did Satan the Devil then have authority to give to Jesus, because it was his?

- 3• You, therefore, if you do an act of worship before me, it will all be yours. (Luke 4:7)**

[Question] What did Satan the Devil want Jesus to do before him?

- 4• Now there is a judging of this world. Now the ruler of this world will be cast out. (John 12:31)**

[Question] How was there a judging of Satan the Devil, by what Jesus did?

- 5• Among whom the god of this system of things has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, that the illumination of the glorious Good News about the Christ, who is the image of God, might not shine through. (2 Corinthians 4:4)

[Question] Whose minds does Satan the Devil blind, and what does he not want them to correctly understand?

- 6• Watch out for yourselves for fear your heart may be enticed, and you do turn aside and worship other gods and bow down to them. (Deuteronomy 11:16)

[Question] What did Moses tell the Israelites to watch out for?

- 7• And whoever does not fall down and worship will at the same moment be thrown into the burning fiery furnace. (Daniel 3:6)

[Question] What threat was made toward the three faithful Hebrew men by Nebuchadnezzar?

Matthew 4:10•• Then Jesus said to him; Go away, Satan! For it is written: It is Yehowah¹ your God you must worship, and it is to him alone you must render sacred service.²

Footnote: See Appendix 1D

Footnote: You must render sacred service Greek, *la-treu'seis*; J¹⁷, 18, 22 (Hebrew), *ta-'avodh'*, you must serve (worship) See (Exodus 3:12) Footnote

- 1• Would Jesus Christ succumb to such deception, and give even one act of worship to Satan the Devil, or would he stand in his integrity for the truth? He again quoted the Bible, to show, that worship belongs to Yehowah God alone. It does not belong to governments of men, or individuals, or Satan the Devil, or to anything else. Worship belongs to Yehowah God alone!

[Question] Did Jesus then succumb to Satan the Devil and lose his integrity?

[Question] How did Jesus then successfully resist the suggestions of Satan the Devil?

[Question] Who alone deserves our complete worship?

- 2• You must not bow down to them or be led to serve them, because I Yehowah your God am a God exacting exclusive devotion, bringing punishment for the error of fathers upon sons, and upon the third generation and upon the fourth generation, in the case of those who hate me. (Deuteronomy 5:9)

[Question] What warning did Yehowah God give to the Israelites before entering the Promised Land?

- 3• **But he tells me; Be careful! Do not do that! All I am is a fellow slave of you, and of your brothers, who are prophets, and of those who are observing the words of this scroll. Worship God. (Revelation 22:9)**

[Question] What warning was given John by the angel that delivered the Revelation to him?

- 4• **Yehowah your God you should fear, and him you should serve, and by his name you should swear. (Deuteronomy 6:13)**

[Question] Who alone did Moses tell the Israelites to serve, and to fear?

- 5• **Yehowah your God you should fear. Him you should serve, and to him you should cling, and by his name you should make sworn statements. (Deuteronomy 10:20)**

[Question] What counsel did Moses give the Israelites regarding their service to Yehowah God?

- 6• **And now fear Yehowah and serve him in faultlessness and in truth, and remove the gods that your forefathers served on the other side of the River and in Egypt, and serve Yehowah. (Joshua 24:14)**

[Question] How should all men serve Yehowah God, and what must not divide our worship to him?

- 7• **In reply Jesus said to him; It is written: It is Yehowah your God you must worship, and it is to him alone you must render sacred service. (Luke 4:8)**

[Question] Whom did Jesus state, that men must worship alone?

- 8• **Abraham now said to his attendants; You stay here with the ass, but I and the boy want to go on over there and worship and return to you. (Genesis 22:5)**

[Question] How did Abraham worship, in the example of Abraham and Isaac on Mount Moriah?

- 9• **You must not bow down to them, nor be induced to serve them, because I, Yehowah your God, am a God exacting exclusive devotion, bringing punishment for the error of fathers upon sons, upon the third generation, and upon the fourth generation, in the case of those who hate me. (Exodus 20:5)**

[Question] What kind of a God is Yehowah God, and what does he demand from all those professing to love him?

[Question] How will he deal with all those who hate him?

- 10· And you must serve Yehowah your God, and he will certainly bless your bread and your water, and I shall indeed turn malady away from your midst. (Exodus 23:25)**

[Question] What blessings would come to God's people for their service to him?

- 11· Then Joshua said to the people; You are not able to serve Yehowah, for he is a holy God. He is a God exacting exclusive devotion. He will not pardon your revolting and your sins. (Joshua 24:19)**

[Question] What kind of a God is Yehowah God, and so, how must men serve him?

- 12· Now do not stiffen your neck as your forefathers did. Give place to Yehowah and come to his sanctuary, that he has sanctified to time indefinite, and serve Yehowah your God, that his burning anger may turn back from you. (2 Chronicles 30:8)**

[Question] How were men to come to serve Yehowah God under the Law Covenant?

- 13· O come in, let us worship and bow down. Let us kneel before Yehowah our Maker. (Psalms 95:6)**

[Question] How did the Psalmist feel about the true worship of Yehowah God?

- 14· Nebuchadnezzar was answering and saying; Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, who sent his angel and rescued his servants that trusted in him and that changed the very word of the king and gave over their bodies, because they would not serve and would not worship any god at all except their own God. (Daniel 3:28)**

[Question] How did Nebuchadnezzar feel after seeing the glorious power of Yehowah God to save his servants?

- 15· But, turning his back, he said to Peter; Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to me, because you think, not God's thoughts, but those of men. (Matthew 16:23)**

[Question] What did Jesus call Peter, when Peter resisted his words?

- 16• Even those who exchanged the truth of God for the lie, and **who** venerated and rendered sacred service to the creation, rather than the One who created, who is blessed forever. Amen. (**Romans 1:25**)

[Question] What things do many men worship wrongly?

- 17• However, for those who are contentious and who disobey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, there will be wrath and anger. (**Romans 2:8**)

[Question] What will those ones receive, who are contentious, and who disobey the truth?

- 18• Further, what harmony is there between Christ and Belial? Or what portion does a faithful person have with an unbeliever? (**2 Corinthians 6:15**)

[Question] Is there any sharing between Christ and Belial, or that which is good for nothing?

[Question] Is there any sharing between a faithful person and an unbeliever?

- 19• Subject yourselves, therefore, to God, but oppose the Devil, and he will flee from you. (**James 4:7**)

[Question] Whom does James tell us to subject ourselves to, and with what outcome?

- 20• And the four living creatures went saying; Amen! And the elders fell down and worshiped. (**Revelation 5:14**)

[Question] How do those before God's throne feel about worship?

- 21• That is why they are before the throne of God, and they are rendering him sacred service day and night in his temple, and the One seated on the throne will spread his tent over them. (**Revelation 7:15**)

[Question] Why are the Great Crowd before God's throne in heaven, and how will Yehowah God treat all such ones?

- 22• So down the great dragon was hurled, the original serpent, the one called Devil and Satan, who is misleading the entire inhabited earth. He was hurled down to the earth, and his angels were hurled down with him. (**Revelation 12:9**)

[Question] Who is misleading the entire inhabited earth, and where has he been thrown during these Last Days?

- 23• At that I fell down before his feet to worship him. But he

tells me; Be careful! Do not do that! All I am is a fellow slave of you and of your brothers, who have the work of witnessing to Jesus. Worship God. For the bearing witness to Jesus is what inspires prophesying. ([Revelation 19:10](#))

[Question] What counsel did the angel presenting the Revelation vision to John make, when John tried to worship him?

Matthew 4:11 Then the Devil left him, and, look! Angels came and began to minister to him.

1• After these three temptations then the Devil left him, and God's angels came and began to minister to him, to strengthen him for the work ahead. Also during these forty days, Jesus no doubt came to grips with his new understanding of who he truly was, and what God's purpose was, respecting him in the future.

[Question] Who then, came to minister to Jesus after Satan the Devil left him?

[Question] What did this time alone, also give Jesus time to resolve down in his own mind?

2• So the Devil, having concluded all the temptation, retired from him, until another convenient time. ([Luke 4:13](#))

[Question] Where then, did Satan the Devil go to?

3• Subject yourselves, therefore, to God, but oppose the Devil, and he will flee from you. ([James 4:7](#))

[Question] What counsel did James give to anointed Christians?

4• Then an angel from heaven appeared to him and strengthened him. ([Luke 22:43](#))

[Question] Who then, appeared to Jesus, and what did he do for Jesus?

5• Are they not all spirits for public service, sent forth to minister for those who are going to inherit salvation? ([Hebrews 1:14](#))

[Question] What is the role of all of God's faithful angels?

6• No enemy will make exactions upon him, neither will any son of unrighteousness afflict him. ([Psalms 89:22](#))

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise concerning his Messiah?

7• Or do you think that I cannot appeal to my Father to supply me at this moment more than twelve legions of angels?

(Matthew 26:53)

[Question] What did Jesus show on the night of his arrest that he had authority to call forth to stop those events?

- 8• So he continued in the wilderness forty days, being tempted by Satan, and he was with the wild beasts, but the angels were ministering to him. (Mark 1:13)**

[Question] Where did Jesus spend those forty days and who was with him there?

- 9• He further said to him; Most truly I say to you men, you will see heaven opened up and the angels of God ascending and descending to the Son of man. (John 1:51)**

[Question] What did Jesus tell his disciples, that they would eventually come to see?

Matthew 4:12• Now when he heard that John had been arrested, he withdrew into Galilee.

- 1• Later, Jesus Christ heard that John the Baptist had been arrested by Herod, and then he withdrew into the regions of Galilee, where he later began his work as God's prophet.**

[Question] What event prompted Jesus to withdraw back into Galilee?

- 2• For Herod had arrested John, and bound him, and put him away in prison, on account of Herodias the wife of Philip his brother. (Matthew 14:3)**

[Question] Why did Herod arrest John the Baptist?

- 3• Now after John was put under arrest Jesus went into Galilee, preaching the Good News of God. (Mark 1:14)**

[Question] Where did Jesus go to preach once John the Baptist was arrested?

- 4• For Herod himself had sent out and arrested John and bound him in prison on account of Herodias the wife of Philip his brother, because he had married her. (Mark 6:17)**

[Question] What caused Herod to want to arrest John the Baptist in the first place?

- 5• Added also this to all those deeds. He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:20)**

[Question] What wicked deeds was Herod responsible for?

- 6• Now Jesus returned in the power of the spirit into Galilee.**

And good talk concerning him spread out through all the surrounding country. (Luke 4:14)

[Question] How did the common people view Jesus' ministry once he returned to Galilee from Judea, for what had they heard about his work?

Matthew 4:13 Further, after leaving Nazareth, he came and took up residence in Capernaum beside the sea, in the districts of Zebulun and Naphtali.

1• First Jesus returned to his hometown, but later he took up living in Capernaum beside the sea, in the districts of Zebulun and Naphtali, within the tribal inheritances of these two sons of Israel.

[Question] What did Jesus at first go, and then to where?

2• And he went down to Capernaum, a city of Galilee. And he was teaching them on the Sabbath. (Luke 4:31)

[Question] Where did Jesus go early on in his ministry, and where did he customarily teach?

3• After this he and his mother and brothers and his disciples went down to Capernaum, but they did not stay there many days. (John 2:12)

[Question] Who later came down to Capernaum to visit Jesus?

4• It was for the sons of Naphtali that the sixth lot came out, for the sons of Naphtali by their families. (Joshua 19:32)

[Question] Who received the sixth lot of land inheritance during the apportionment by Joshua?

5• Zebulun will reside by the seashore, and he will be by the shore where the ships lie anchored, and his remote side will be toward Sidon. (Genesis 49:13)

[Question] What sea did land of Zebulun border against on the east, and on the west, what sea?

6• Naphtali is a slender hind. He is giving words of elegance. (Genesis 49:21)

[Question] What blessing was given to Naphtali by Jacob?

7• At this he said to them; No doubt you will apply this illustration to me, Physician, cure yourself. The things we heard as having happened in Capernaum do also here in your home territory. (Luke 4:23)

[Question] How did the people of Jesus' hometown feel upon hearing of the things he did in Capernaum?

- 8• So, boarding the boat, he proceeded across and went into his own city. (**Matthew 9:1**)

[Question] What did Capernaum come to be known as respecting him, because Peter, Andrew and Matthew lived there?

- 9• And they went their way into Capernaum. No sooner was it the Sabbath than he entered into the synagogue and began to teach. (**Mark 1:21**)

[Question] Where did Jesus go to in Capernaum to teach the Jews?

Matthew 4:14• That there might be fulfilled what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet, saying:

- 1• This initial work by Jesus Christ fulfilled the scripture of Isaiah quoted below by Matthew.

[Question] What scripture did this initial work of Jesus fulfill?

Matthew 4:15• O land of Zebulun and land of Naphtali, along the road of the sea, on the other side of the Jordan, Galilee of the nations!

- 1• This land that lay along the road that led to the sea, Zebulun and Naphtali, on the other side of the Jordan River, also called Galilee of the nations, would see a great light, the spiritual light of the Messiah of God.

[Question] What had this prophecy foretold that the people of those regions would see?

- 2• However, the obscurity will not be as when the land had stress, as at the former time when one treated with contempt the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali and when at the later time one caused it to be honored, the way by the sea, in the region of the Jordan, Galilee of the nations. (**Isaiah 9:1**)

[Question] What area did the prophecy of Isaiah say would be honored?

- 3• Naphtali is a slender hind. He is giving words of elegance. (**Genesis 49:21**)

[Question] What was the blessing of Jacob toward his son Naphtali?

- 4• In the days of Pekah the king of Israel, Tiglath-pileser the king of Assyria came in and proceeded to take Ijon and

Abel-beth-maacah and Janoah and Kedesh and Hazor and Gilead and Galilee, all the land of Naphtali, and to carry them into exile in Assyria. (2 Kings 15:29)

[Question] When had the original inhabitants of this land been exiled off of this God-given land?

- 5• In answer they said to him; You are not also out of Galilee, are you? Search and see that no prophet is to be raised up out of Galilee. (John 7:52)**

[Question] Though Jesus was born in Bethlehem, since he was raised in Galilee, what did many think about him?

Matthew 4:16•• The people sitting in darkness saw a great light, and as for those sitting in a region of deathly shadow, light rose upon them.

- 1• The people sitting in spiritual darkness in this region of Israel would see a great light, and toward those sitting in death's shadow, light would rise upon them. Those sitting in death's shadow were all those over whom sin was master, and who had only death to look forward to for their sins. The bright light of the work of God's Messiah would diffuse this shadow of death resting upon them, bringing the light of life to them.**

[Question] How was this great light to be made manifest, to these people of Israel?

- 2• And to the earth he will look, and, lo! Distress and darkness, obscurity, hard times and gloominess with no brightness. (Isaiah 8:22)**

[Question] How did the prophecy of Isaiah point to the gloom and darkness of living under the shadow of sin and death?

- 3• The people that were walking in the darkness have seen a great light. As for those dwelling in the land of deep shadow, light itself has shone upon them. (Isaiah 9:2)**

[Question] What did the prophecy of Isaiah show, that these people were living under, and what would they see?

- 4• To give light to those sitting in darkness and death's shadow, to direct our feet prosperously in the way of peace. (Luke 1:79)**

[Question] What did Zechariah prophesy that the Messiah Jesus would do for these people?

- 5• The true light that gives light to every sort of man was about to come into the world. (**John 1:9**)

[Question] Who is the true light of God?

- 6• The people that were walking in the darkness have seen a great light. As for those dwelling in the land of deep shadow, light itself has shone upon them. (**Isaiah 9:2**)

[Question] Why were the people of Israel walking in death's shadow, and how did the work of Jesus Christ enlighten them, about God's purpose for them?

- 7• Even though I walk in the valley of deep shadow, I fear nothing bad, for you are with me, your rod and your staff are the things that comfort me. (**Psalms 23:4**)

[Question] How did King David prophesy about his own trust and confidence in Yehowah God?

[Question] How did David show that the Bible, the rod, and the promises of God within the Bible, the staff, guided him through distressing circumstances?

- 8• A light for removing the veil from the nations and a glory of your people Israel. (**Luke 2:32**)

[Question] What would the light Jesus Christ brought, remove from the nations, and what would it become to the Israelites?

- 9• Therefore Jesus spoke again to them, saying; I am the light of the world. He that follows me will by no means walk in darkness, but will possess the light of life. (**John 8:12**)

[Question] What did Jesus say, that he himself was?

[Question] What did Jesus state, that men who followed after him would walk in?

Matthew 4:17• From that time on Jesus commenced preaching and saying; Repent, you people, for the kingdom of the heavens has drawn near.

- 1• What fine message did Jesus Christ now take up? Repent, for the Kingdom of the heavens has drawn near! Why though was it near? Because the king designate of that Kingdom was on earth, and he was giving mankind a sample of the goodness of God, and of how his Kingdom would bless them in the future. No good thing would be impossible for that Kingdom to accomplish.

[Question] What was the message Jesus took up now?

[Question] Why can we say that, that Kingdom of God was then near?

[Question] What is possible for mankind under that Kingdom?

- 2• And saying; The appointed time has been fulfilled, and the kingdom of God has drawn near. Be repentant, you people, and have faith in the Good News. (**Mark 1:15**)

[Question] What appointed time had been fulfilled in Jesus' day, and so how should the people then, have responded to God's mercy?

- 3• Saying; Repent, for the kingdom of the heavens has drawn near. (**Matthew 3:2**)

[Question] What message was an integral part of the preaching of Jesus and his apostles?

- 4• As you go, preach, saying; The kingdom of the heavens has drawn near. (**Matthew 10:7**)

[Question] What command do anointed Christians have as respects the message that they are to preach?

- 5• But now they are reaching out for a better place, that is, one belonging to heaven. Hence God is not ashamed of them, to be called upon as their God, for he has made a city ready for them. (**Hebrews 11:16**)

[Question] What are all faithful men reaching out for, that lies directly ahead of them?

[Question] How then, does God feel about such men, and why?

Matthew 4:18• Walking alongside the sea of Galilee he saw two brothers, Simon who is called Peter and Andrew his brother, letting down a fishing net into the sea, for they were fishers.

- 1• In this region of Capernaum by the sea then, Jesus Christ began to collect together the men who would become his followers and eventually apostles of his. While walking alongside the sea he encountered Simon, who is also called Peter, and his brother Andrew, who were in a boat and actively fishing, letting their net down into the sea, for they were fishermen by trade.

[Question] What work did Jesus also start here in Capernaum?

[Question] Whom did he encounter in this seaside city, and what was the trade that these men were working at?

- 2• While walking alongside the sea of Galilee he saw Simon and Andrew the brother of Simon casting their nets about in the sea, for they were fishers. (**Mark 1:16**)

[Question] What were Simon Peter and Andrew his brother doing when Jesus first approached them, to invite them to be his disciples?

- 3• He led him to Jesus. When Jesus looked upon him he said; You are Simon the son of John. You will be called Cephas, which is translated Peter. (**John 1:42**)

[Question] What name change, did Jesus immediately effect for Simon, son of John?

- 4• This is what you may eat of everything that is in the waters. Everything that has fins and scales in the waters, in the seas and in the torrents, those you may eat. (**Leviticus 11:9**)

[Question] What things that grow in the sea, were clean foods for Israelites?

- 5• On an occasion when the crowd was pressing close upon him and listening to the word of God, he was standing beside the lake of Gennesaret. (**Luke 5:1**)

[Question] Where was Jesus when a large crowd approached him, and what is another name for this lake?

- 6• Andrew the brother of Simon Peter was one of the two that heard what John said, and followed Jesus. (**John 1:40**)

[Question] Who was Andrew, and when did he first come to hear of Jesus Christ?

Matthew 4:19• And he said to them; Come after me, and I will make you fishers of men.

- 1• Jesus Christ now made a simple invitation to these two, to come after him, and he would make them become fishers of men. This showed them, that they would be doing work similar to what they were now doing, but with a different objective.

[Question] What then, did Jesus invite these two men to do, and what would he make them?

[Question] What did this show about the future work that they would be doing?

- 2• And likewise both James and John, Zebedee's sons, who were sharers with Simon. But Jesus said to Simon; Stop being afraid. From now on you will be catching men alive. (**Luke 5:10**)

[Question] Who were also partners with Peter and Andrew in their fishing business, and what did Jesus tell them?

- 3• The fruitage of the righteous one is a tree of life, and he that is winning souls is wise. (**Proverbs 11:30**)

[Question] What is the fruitage of the righteous ones, and what is it to work at winning souls?

- 4• So Jesus said to them; Come after me, and I shall cause you to become fishers of men. (**Mark 1:17**)

[Question] What invitation did Jesus then make to them, and what work would they then do, along with Jesus?

Matthew 4:20• At once abandoning the nets, they followed him.

- 1• Andrew had been one of John the Baptist's disciples, and had heard him declare Jesus Christ to be the Lamb of God, the one that takes away the sin of the world. So when getting this invitation he and Peter readily accepted it. They dropped their nets, and began following Jesus immediately.

[Question] What had Andrew overheard while one of John the Baptist's disciples?

[Question] So when Jesus invited them, what did they readily do?

- 1• Peter started to say to him; Look! We left all things and have been following you. (**Mark 10:28**)

[Question] What did Peter later confess to Jesus about, what they had given up to follow after Jesus?

- 2• But Peter said; Look! We have left our own things and followed you. (**Luke 18:28**)

[Question] What then, did Peter and Andrew just leave behind to follow after Jesus?

- 3• Your people will offer themselves willingly on the day of your military force. In the splendors of holiness, from the womb of the dawn, you have your company of young men just like dewdrops. (**Psalms 110:3**)

[Question] What scripture did this help to fulfill from the Psalms?

- 4• And I began to hear the voice of Yehowah saying; Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? And I proceeded to say; Here I am! Send me. (**Isaiah 6:8**)

[Question] What invitation had the prophet Isaiah readily accepted when invited by God?

- 5• So they brought the boats back to land, and abandoned

everything and followed him. (Luke 5:11)

[Question] So then, what did they do with their fishing business, when invited to become Jesus' disciples?

6· When he has got all his own out, he goes before them, and the sheep follow him, because they know his voice. (John 10:4)

[Question] What did Jesus Christ show about his words, and who would listen to them?

7· My sheep listen to my voice, and I know them, and they follow me. (John 10:27)

[Question] What voice, do the sheep who belong to Jesus, listen to?

Matthew 4:21· Going on also from there he saw two others who were brothers, James the son of Zebedee and John his brother, in the boat with Zebedee their father, mending their nets, and he called them.

1· Later along that same area, he found James and John, sons of Zebedee, two brothers who also were fishermen, along with their father Zebedee, and they were mending their nets when he approached, and he called them also, to become fishers of men as his followers.

[Question] Who then, did Jesus encounter nearby, who were partners with Peter and Andrew, and what were they doing?

2· And after going a little farther he saw James the son of Zebedee and John his brother, in fact, while they were in their boat mending their nets. (Mark 1:19)

[Question] When Jesus first found James and John, what were they doing?

3· There were in company Simon Peter and Thomas, who was called The Twin, and Nathanael from Cana of Galilee and the sons of Zebedee and two others of his disciples. (John 21:2)

[Question] Where was his apostle Nathanael from?

4· The names of the twelve apostles are these; First, Simon, the one called Peter, and Andrew his brother, and James the son of Zebedee and John his brother. (Matthew 10:2)

[Question] Who were the first four of Jesus' apostles selected?

- 5• **Among whom was Mary Magdalene, also Mary the mother of James and Joses, and the mother of the sons of Zebedee. (Matthew 27:56)**

[Question] Whose mother then, traveled around many times with Jesus and his disciples?

- 6• **And James the son of Zebedee and John the brother of James, he also gave these the surname Boanerges, which means Sons of Thunder. (Mark 3:17)**

[Question] What did Jesus later come to call these two sons of Zebedee?

- 7• **And James and John, the two sons of Zebedee, stepped up to him and said to him; Teacher, we want you to do for us whatever it is we ask you for. (Mark 10:35)**

[Question] How did these two brothers later come to be favorites among his disciples?

- 8• **Then the mother of the sons of Zebedee approached him with her sons, doing obeisance, and asking for something from him. (Matthew 20:20)**

[Question] What did their mother later ask Jesus for in behalf of her two sons?

- 9• **And he saw two boats docked at the lakeside, but the fishermen had got out of them, and were washing off their nets. (Luke 5:2)**

[Question] Where were Peter and Andrew when Jesus first called them?

- 10•• **And likewise both James and John, Zebedee's sons, who were sharers with Simon. But Jesus said to Simon; Stop being afraid. From now on you will be catching men alive. (Luke 5:10)**

[Question] What partnership existed between Peter and James?

[Question] What did Jesus then invite them, to become fishers of?

- 11• **He did away with James the brother of John by the sword. (Acts of Apostles 12:2)**

[Question] How was James eventually killed?

Matthew 4:22•• At once leaving the boat and their father, they followed him.

1• They too, knew of the work of Jesus Christ, and they at once abandoned their nets and their father's fishing business and they followed Jesus.

[Question] What did they also know about Jesus, and so how did they respond to his invitation?

2• Therefore do not fear them, for there is nothing covered over that will not become uncovered, and secret that will not become known. (Matthew 10:26)

[Question] What did Jesus state about matters, that once were secret?

Matthew 4:23•• Then he went around throughout the whole of Galilee, teaching in their synagogues and preaching the Good News of the kingdom¹ and curing every sort of disease and every sort of infirmity among the people.

Footnote: Or, evangel; gospel Greek, *eu-ag-ge'li-on*; Latin, *e-van-ge'li-um*

1• From this start, Jesus went around throughout all of Galilee teaching in the Jewish synagogues and preaching about the Good News of God's Kingdom to come. Jesus Christ also, through the power of the Holy Spirit within him, went curing men of every sort of disease and every sort of infirmity. Thus he demonstrated that Yehowah God was with his people, O Immanuel, and he wanted only good for them.

[Question] What work did Jesus then commence to do, and where?

[Question] What did this demonstrate to the people of the region about God?

2• And Jesus set out on a tour of all the cities and villages, teaching in their synagogues, and preaching the Good News of the kingdom, and curing every sort of disease and every sort of infirmity. (Matthew 9:35)

[Question] What did Jesus then set out to accomplish, and how did he do the work assigned by God?

3• Indeed, he wondered at their lack of faith. And he went roundabout to the villages in a circuit, teaching. (Mark 6:6)

[Question] Where did Jesus go, and where did he then teach?

4• Now after John was put under arrest, Jesus went into Galilee, preaching the Good News of God (Mark 1:14)

[Question] Where did Jesus go after John the Baptist was put under house arrest by Herod?

- 5• And he did go, preaching in their synagogues throughout the whole of Galilee and expelling the demons. (Mark 1:39)**

[Question] Where did Jesus Christ then center his teaching, and why there?

[Question] What powerful works accompanied his teachings?

- 6• And he came to Nazareth, where he had been reared, and, according to his custom on the Sabbath day, he entered into the synagogue, and he stood up to read. (Luke 4:16)**

[Question] What was it Jesus' custom to do on the Sabbath day?

- 7• They, however, went on from Perga and came to Antioch in Pisidia, and going into the synagogue on the Sabbath day, they took a seat. (Acts of Apostles 13:14)**

[Question] How did Paul later copy his fine example, while preaching in other lands?

- 8• But the crowds, getting to know it, followed him. And he received them kindly and began to speak to them about the kingdom of God, and he healed those needing a cure. (Luke 9:11)**

[Question] Though always surrounded with large crowds, how did Jesus treat people who needed his help?

- 9• Namely, Jesus who was from Nazareth, how God anointed him with Holy Spirit and power, and he went through the land doing good and healing all those oppressed by the Devil, because God was with him. (Acts of Apostles 10:38)**

[Question] What does the book of apostles tell us, about the work of Jesus Christ?

- 10• About the glory of your kingship they will talk, and about your mightiness they will speak. (Psalms 145:11)**

[Question] What did the Psalms prophetically state, that men would speak about?

- 11• Now when Jesus had finished giving instructions to his twelve disciples, he set out from there to teach and preach in their cities. (Matthew 11:1)**

[Question] What did Jesus do after giving his disciples instructions on how to preach?

- 12• The blind are seeing again, and the lame are walking about, the lepers are being cleansed and the deaf are hearing, and the dead are being raised up, and the poor are having the Good News declared to them. (**Matthew 11:5**)

[Question] What did Jesus tell the two disciples of John the Baptist that John sent to him to ask him, if he was the Messiah?

- 13• But he said to them; Also to other cities I must declare the Good News of the kingdom of God, because for this, I was sent forth. (**Luke 4:43**)

[Question] Why did Jesus keep moving around in his ministry in a circuit?

- 14• However, he would give a talk in the synagogue every Sabbath, and would persuade Jews and Greeks. (**Acts of Apostles 18:4**)

[Question] Who did Paul reach thousands of Jews in foreign lands about the message of the Christ?

- 15• For me to be a public servant of Christ Jesus to the nations, engaging in the holy work of the Good News of God, in order, that the offering, namely, these nations, might prove to be acceptable, it being sanctified with Holy Spirit. (**Romans 15:16**)

[Question] What kind of a work is the preaching of the Good News of God's Kingdom?

[Question] What does this work prepare people for, and under what power is it accomplished?

- 16• For we have had the Good News declared to us also, even as they also had. But the word which was heard did not benefit them, because they were not united by faith with those who did hear. (**Hebrews 4:2**)

[Question] Why did the word the Israelites heard in the wilderness, not benefit them?

Matthew 4:24• And the report about him went out into all Syria. They brought him all those faring badly, distressed with various diseases and torments, demon-possessed and epileptic and paralyzed persons, and he cured them.

- 1• Since he was doing great healings the word quickly spread about his work among the people throughout all of Syria. They would bring to him all sorts of persons who were faring badly,

sickly, demon possessed, epileptic and paralyzed persons, and he would cure them all. This work is a foregleam of the glorious work, that will transpire under the Kingdom of God in the future, and was given them then as a promise and a guarantee, of the good rule of God toward his people.

[Question] Why did the word about Jesus spread so quickly throughout the land of Israel, and far beyond there?

[Question] What did Jesus effect, for all those faithful ones who came to him in droves?

[Question] What was the work of Jesus then a foregleam of, and what does it guarantee for us all for the future?

- 2• But he went through Syria and Cilicia, strengthening the congregations. (**Acts of Apostles 15:41**)

[Question] How did Paul imitate the example of Christ in his ministry?

- 3• And they ran around all that region and started to carry about on cots, those who were ailing, to where they heard he was. (**Mark 6:55**)

[Question] What did the people do when hearing, that Jesus was coming to their area?

- 4• Lord, have mercy on my son, because he is an epileptic and is ill, for he falls often into the fire, and often into the water. (**Matthew 17:15**)

[Question] What kinds of serious diseases was Jesus able to heal people of, time and again?

- 5• After evening had fallen, when the sun had set, the people began bringing him all those who were ill, and those demon-possessed. (**Mark 1:32**)

[Question] What kinds of persons were often brought to Jesus for him to heal them?

- 6• Also, the multitude from the cities around Jerusalem kept coming together, bearing sick people and those troubled with unclean spirits, and they would one and all be cured. (**Acts of Apostles 5:16**)

[Question] When Peter and John performed a miracle, how did the people in the surrounding areas react, upon hearing it?

- 7• So the report about him spread out immediately in all directions through all the country round about in Galilee. (**Mark 1:28**)

[Question] How then, was word spread far and wide about Jesus, unlike today?

Matthew 4:25• **Consequently great crowds followed him from Galilee and Decapolis¹ and Jerusalem and Judea, and from the other side of the Jordan.**

Footnote: Or, The [league of] Ten Cities

1• For this reason great crowds came to him, and even followed him from city to city through the ten cities of the Decapolis, people even coming to him from Jerusalem and Judah on the other side of the Jordan River, after hearing of his fine works.

[Question] When Jesus traveled from one place to another, who followed along, and why?

2• But Jesus with his disciples withdrew to the sea, and a great multitude from Galilee and from Judea followed him. (Mark 3:7)

[Question] Where did Jesus often have to withdraw to, to get away from the crowds of people coming to him continually?

3• And he came down with them and took his station on a level place, and there was a great crowd of his disciples, and a great multitude of people from all of Judea and Jerusalem and the maritime country of Tyre and Sidon, who came to hear him and be healed of their sicknesses. (Luke 6:17)

[Question] From how far away did people come to him carrying their sick ones for them to be healed, and was this easy in that day?

4• But the word about him was spreading the more, and great crowds would come together to listen and to be cured of their sicknesses. (Luke 5:15)

[Question] What happened to the size of the crowds as the word spread about Jesus?

Matthew Chapter 5

Matthew 5:1 When he saw the crowds he went up into the mountain, and after he sat down his disciples came to him.

1 When Jesus Christ saw the great crowds gathered together to him, he went up into the mountain, and after he sat down, his disciples came to him and sat alongside of him.

[Question] Where did Jesus also go to, to get away from the crowds, and to be with his disciples, yet what then happened?

2 Crossing country from there, Jesus next came near the sea of Galilee, and, after going up into the mountain, he was sitting there. (**Matthew 15:29**)

[Question] Where was Jesus stationed, when he made his most famous discourse?

Matthew 5:2 And he opened his mouth and began teaching them, saying;

1 Then Jesus started to speak and to teach, giving one of the most important talks of his ministry, the Sermon on the Mount.

[Question] What has this sermon come to be called today?

2 And he lifted up his eyes upon his disciples and began to say; Happy are you poor, because yours is the kingdom of God. (**Luke 6:20**)

[Question] How did he start this famous talk, with his close disciples gathered close around him?

Matthew 5:3 Happy¹ are those conscious of their spiritual need,² since the kingdom of the heavens belongs to them.

Footnote: Happy Greek, *Ma-ka'ri-oi*; Latin, *be-a'ti*, the basis for the term beatitudes

Footnote: Or, those who are beggars for the spirit

1 Jesus now focused their attention on what was truly important in life, their spiritual needs. He declared happy those who were there gathered around him, for they were conscious of their spiritual needs, and they were the ones to whom the Kingdom belonged, those conscious of their spiritual needs.

[Question] What did Jesus now focus their attention upon?

[Question] Why did he call those close to him happy, and so what belonged to them?

2• What are your spiritual needs? Some would say, unanswered questions about life and its meaning. Others would say, not knowing how to deal with difficult circumstances and events within our lives. Some other would say, a sense of emptiness, purposelessness or loneliness. The Bible truly holds refreshing answers in all of these areas. Perhaps you know this already, but do you still have personal spiritual needs?

[Question] What would you say constitute your own spiritual needs, and what do many people say to this question?

[Question] Where alone can we find refreshing answers for all these questions of the heart?

3• Just attending the meetings or your local congregation somewhere, won't fill your personal spiritual needs. Such needs are as personal as a fingerprint or D.N.A. Each one's need is unique like no other. To fill these needs requires research, meditation, prayer, study and determination, all this focused on one's personal spiritual needs.

[Question] Does the practice of religion by most people, really fill these needs?

[Question] How unique are your spiritual needs?

[Question] What is required personally be each disciple of Jesus to fill these personal spiritual needs, and how should this work be focused?

4• In like manner the spirit also joins in with help for our weakness, for the problem of what we should pray for as we need to we do not know, but the spirit itself pleads for us with groanings unuttered. ([Romans 8:26](#))

[Question] How did Paul show how the Holy Spirit works within our lives to help us address our spiritual needs?

5• Yet he who searches the hearts knows what the meaning of the spirit is, because it is pleading in accord with God for holy ones. ([Romans 8:27](#))

[Question] What does Yehowah God understand better than mankind, about how the spirit works within each disciple of Christ?

6• This is what it means to be conscious of one's personal spiritual needs. How about you? Are you focused on your own personal spiritual needs, or is your spiritual life blurry, and out of focus?

[Question] What questions should every disciple of Christ ask himself, about his own spiritual needs?

7• Why did Jesus say, that the Kingdom of the heavens belongs to suchlike ones? Because people who take time daily to address and redress such needs, will make rapid spiritual progress. This progress, will in turn qualify them, for life in Yehowah's Kingdom. Attention to these matters, also leads to a happier and more fulfilling life now.

[Question] Why then, did Jesus state that the Kingdom of the heavens belongs to suchlike ones?

[Question] What then, will Yehowah God see within those, who work to address these spiritual needs?

[Question] What will attention to these needs daily, do for all men even now?

8• And he lifted up his eyes upon his disciples and began to say; Happy are you poor, because yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20)

[Question] Why did Jesus state, that the poor would be happy?

9• But a physical man does not receive the things of the spirit of God, for they are foolishness to him. He cannot get to know them, because they are examined spiritually. (1 Corinthians 2:14)

[Question] How does a physical man view the matters of the spirit?

[Question] Why can such a man then, never come to know spiritual matters?

10• Listen, my beloved brothers. God chose the ones who are poor respecting the world to be rich in faith and heirs of the kingdom, which he promised to those who love him, did he not? (James 2:5)

[Question] Whom did Yehowah God select from among mankind, to be rich in faith, and heirs of the Kingdom of God?

11• Happy is the man that has not walked in the counsel of the wicked ones, and in the way of sinners has not stood, and in the seat of ridiculers has not sat. (Psalms 1:1)

[Question] What did the Psalmist state would bring a man happiness?

12• Happy is the man that is listening to me by keeping awake at my doors day by day, by watching at the posts of my entrances. (Proverbs 8:34)

[Question] What did the congregator say would make a man happy?

13· And I shall certainly let remain in the midst of you a people humble and lowly, and they will actually take refuge in the name of Yehowah. (Zephaniah 3:12)

[Question] Who did Yehowah God prophetically show he would allow to remain among his people, and where would they take refuge?

14· And so, brothers, I was not able to speak to you as to spiritual men, but as to fleshly men, as to babes in Christ. (1 Corinthians 3:1)

[Question] How did Paul want to speak to Hebrew Christians, yet what was their problem, even though they had possessed the truth since birth?

Matthew 5:4· Happy are those who mourn, since they will be comforted.

1· Jesus now shows a number of reasons for happiness among his disciples. Those, who among them are now mourning over their sicknesses and pains, and over the loss of loved ones, are the very ones that the Kingdom of God will bring comfort to. People who do not look to God for comfort from such things, will just die without them. But those who come to the Kingdom, and look to it for comfort, will be comforted.

[Question] What reasons for happiness does Jesus now show?

[Question] What type of persons would the Kingdom of God bring happiness to?

[Question] Who will gain comfort from Yehowah God and who will not?

2· Mourning is sadness over a loss. It can of course refer to death and meditating over the seriousness of life, but it frequently refers to losses of many kinds. Do you mourn for instance, the loss of human perfection? Do you mourn the loss of everlasting life? Do you mourn the sad conditions of this wicked generation? Do you mourn people's sad lack of appreciation for our gracious heavenly father Yehowah, and his wonderful gifts?

[Question] How can we define mourning?

[Question] What are some other things, that we can mourn the loss of?

3· Clearly there are many other areas besides mourning over death of a loved one. All those who do mourn the loss of these things, will be comforted by Yehowah's Holy Spirit, which comforts all of the mourning ones.

[Question] What is promised to those who mourn now?

- 4• **And in that day you will be sure to say; I shall thank you, O Yehowah, for although you got incensed at me, your anger gradually turned back, and you proceeded to comfort me. (Isaiah 12:1)**

[Question] How would those reeling under Yehowah God's anger, later come to feel under his comfort?

- 5• **To assign to those mourning over Zion, to give them a headdress instead of ashes, the oil of exultation instead of mourning, the mantle of praise instead of the downhearted spirit, and they must be called big trees of righteousness, the planting of Yehowah, for him to be beautified. (Isaiah 61:3)**

[Question] What was part of the commission of the Messiah, Jesus Christ?

- 6• **Come to me, all you who are toiling and loaded down, and I will refresh you. (Matthew 11:28)**

[Question] Whom did Jesus invite to come to him, and how would they then leave?

- 7• **Make us rejoice correspondingly to the days that you have afflicted us, the years that we have seen calamity. (Psalms 90:15)**

[Question] How did the Israelite Psalmist ask God to comfort his people?

- 8• **Those sowing seed with tears will reap even with a joyful cry. (Psalms 126:5)**

[Question] What would those sowing seed with tears, experience later?

- 9• **Better is it to go to the house of mourning than to go to the banquet house, because that is the end of all mankind, and the one alive should take it to his heart. (Ecclesiastes 7:2)**

[Question] Why is it better to go to the house of mourning, than to go to the house of laughter?

[Question] What outcome awaits all men?

- 10• **To proclaim the year of goodwill on the part of Yehowah and the day of vengeance on the part of our God, to comfort all the mourning ones. (Isaiah 61:2)**

[Question] What also was a part of Jesus' preaching commission?

- 11• **And to a dead person of mankind he should not come in so**

as to become unclean, but for father or for mother or for son or for daughter or for brother or for a sister that has not become a husband's, they may make themselves unclean. (**Ezekiel 44:25**)

[Question] Who alone, were the priests of Yehowah allowed to leave their temple service to mourn for, for a short time?

Matthew 5:5 Happy are the mild-tempered ones, since they will inherit the earth.

1· Why will the mild-tempered ones inherit the earth? Because the people who are violent and vindictive, will be cut off from the very earth.

[Question] Why will the mild tempered ones inherit the earth?

2· For evildoers themselves will be cut off, but those hoping in Yehowah are the ones that will possess the earth. (**Psalms 37:9**)

[Question] What does the Psalmist state, will be the outcome for the wicked ones of the earth?

3· And just a little while longer, and the wicked one will be no more, and you will certainly give attention to his place, and he will not be. (**Psalms 37:10**)

[Question] Who will only exist for a little while longer, and when he is gone, what will people give attention to then?

4· But the meek ones themselves will possess the earth, and they will indeed find their exquisite delight in the abundance of peace. (**Psalms 37:11**)

[Question] Who will inherit the earth, and what then will they delight in, when the wicked ones are no more?

5· The righteous themselves will possess the earth, and they will reside forever upon it. (**Psalms 37:29**)

[Question] Who will possess the earth into eternity?

6· For we know him that said: Vengeance is mine. I will recompense. And again: Yehowah will judge his people. (**Hebrews 10:30**)

[Question] Who will take vengeance upon the wicked, and judge just who they are?

7· Being mild-tempered means reacting to reasons for anger with mildness. True Christians do not go to war and kill others.

They realize, that in matters where they are genuinely wronged, that ultimately Yehowah God is the judge of all.

[Question] What does it mean to be mild tempered?

[Question] Whom do true Christians look to, as the final judge of all things?

8• Do not be judging others and you will not be judged. The true course of wisdom then, is to contain our anger, placing the matter in Yehowah's hands to handle. Have your say in your own heart, but do not sin.

[Question] What must we avoid doing, to escape being judged ourselves?

[Question] Who should we allow to handle every matter in our lives?

9• Be agitated, but do not sin. Have your say in your heart, upon your bed, and keep silent. (Psalms 4:4)

[Question] How should we deal with causes for anger?

10• Moreover, stop judging, and you will by no means be judged, and stop condemning, and you will by no means be condemned. Keep on releasing, and you will be released. (Luke 6:37)

[Question] What will help us to avoid being judged, or condemned?

[Question] What will allow us to gain a release from our sins before God?

11• However, you, O man of God, flee from these things. But pursue righteousness, godly devotion, faith, love, endurance, mildness of temper. (1 Timothy 6:11)

[Question] What things should the man of God flee from, and what should he draw close to?

12• To speak injuriously of no one, not to be belligerent, to be reasonable, exhibiting all mildness toward all men. (Titus 3:2)

[Question] How should it be our aim, to treat others always?

13• For not always will the poor one be forgotten, nor will the hope of the meek ones ever perish. (Psalms 9:18)

[Question] What will not always be true on earth?

[Question] Will the hope of the meek ones ever perish?

14• For evildoers themselves will be cut off, but those hoping in Yehowah are the ones that will possess the earth. (Psalms

37:9)

[Question] Who will Yehowah cut off from living on his earth?

[Question] Who then, will come to possess it all?

- 15• The righteous themselves will possess the earth, and they will reside forever upon it. (Psalms 37:29)**

[Question] For how long, will the righteous possess the earth?

- 16• And the meek ones will certainly increase their rejoicing in Yehowah himself, and even the poor ones of mankind will be joyful in the Holy One of Israel himself. (Isaiah 29:19)**

[Question] What will the meek ones increase over time, and also the poor ones?

- 17• For to the right and to the left you will break forth, and your own offspring will take possession even of nations, and they will inhabit even the desolated cities. (Isaiah 54:3)**

[Question] What does Yehowah promise to these righteous ones who serve him, in time?

- 18• And as for your people, all of them will be righteous. To time indefinite they will hold possession of the land, the sprout of my planting, the work of my hands, for me to be beautified. (Isaiah 60:21)**

[Question] What will the earth eventually be made up of entirely, possessing the entire earth?

- 19• But the holy ones of the Supreme One will receive the kingdom, and they will take possession of the kingdom for time indefinite, even for time indefinite upon times indefinite. (Daniel 7:18)**

[Question] Who will the Kingdom of God be given to, to rule over the earth, and for how long will their rulership last?

- 20•• Seek Yehowah, all you meek ones of the earth, who have practiced His own judicial decision. Seek righteousness, seek meekness. Probably, you may be concealed in the day of Yehowah's anger. (Zephaniah 2:3)**

[Question] Who are encouraged to seek Yehowah God, and what promise does he make to them if they do?

Matthew 5:6•• Happy are those hungering and thirsting for righteousness, since they will be filled.

1• Many people today have given up on righteousness. Others just cannot agree, on what righteousness is. Christians know, that Yehowah is the source of all true righteousness. Within the Bible record, he has defined what true righteousness is.

[Question] What is righteousness, and who defines it, and is its true source?

2• Hungering and thirsting today, means that we feel a void because these values are missing from our daily lives and the system we live in. We are hungering and thirsting for a righteous way of life, one with a real future.

[Question] What does it mean to hunger and thirst for righteousness?

3• The system we currently live under can never meet our needs in this respect. Yehowah will tear it down completely, and all of its seeming value will be lost suddenly, as when you crush a brick to powder. From dust you are, and unto dust you will return. (Genesis 3:19)

[Question] What is going to happen to the present system of things, and why?

[Question] In the end, how can we illustrate what will be left of it?

4• If we love this system of things, and we do all of our works for it alone, we are certainly not hungering and thirsting for righteousness. How many of our works are for this system, and how many are for Yehowah's righteousness?

[Question] What would indicate that we are not hungering and thirsting for righteousness?

5• Do you really long for Yehowah's New Order, his glorious Kingdom? Do you picture yourself living in that system, and thoroughly enjoying it? Do you love New Order living?

[Question] What things would show, that we are hungering and thirsting for righteousness?

6• Hungering and thirsting for righteousness means, that we have a void within us, that only Yehowah's Kingdom can and will fill.

[Question] What does hungering and thirsting for righteousness mean?

7• Hey there, all you thirsty ones! Come to the water. And the ones that have no money! Come, buy and eat. Yes, come, buy wine and milk even without money and without price. (Isaiah 55:1)

[Question] What does Yehowah, through his prophet Isaiah, invite his people to do?

- 8• Happy are you who hunger now, because you will be filled. Happy are you who weep now, because you will laugh. (Luke 6:21)**

[Question] What then, will those who now hunger and mourn, experience then?

- 9• Jesus said to them; I am the bread of life. He that comes to me will not get hungry at all, and he that exercises faith in me will never get thirsty at all. (John 6:35)**

[Question] What did Jesus Christ call himself?

[Question] How then, can Christians satisfy their spiritual hunger and thirst?

- 10• They will hunger no more nor thirst anymore, neither will the sun beat down upon them, nor any scorching heat. (Revelation 7:16)**

[Question] What promise is made in Revelation, and in what ways should we apply this?

- 11• Then he came in and closed the door behind them both, and began to pray to Yehowah. (2 Kings 4:33)**

[Question] Whom did Elisha look to, to assist him?

- 12• The desire of the righteous ones is surely good. The hope of the wicked ones is fury. (Proverbs 11:23)**

[Question] What is the desire of the righteous ones?

- 13• The fear of Yehowah tends toward life, and one will spend the night satisfied. One will not be visited with what is bad. (Proverbs 19:23)**

[Question] What assurances does the righteous one have from God?

- 14• He that is pursuing righteousness and loving-kindness will find life, righteousness and glory. (Proverbs 21:21)**

[Question] What will the one pursuing righteousness and loving-kindness find?

Matthew 5:7• Happy are the merciful, since they will be shown mercy.

- 1• Mercy is extending forgiveness to people that are sinful, based on a generous heart. I want mercy and not sacrifice.**

(Matthew 9:13) Sacrificing is a balancing of a situation of wrongdoing, based on the wrongdoer giving up something of equal value, in exchange for the error committed.

[Question] What is mercy?

[Question] What would Yehowah God prefer over sacrifice?

[Question] What is sacrifice, and how does it relate to justice?

2• Thus Jesus Christ could offer a sacrifice of perfect love, loyalty and devotion back to Yehowah, which was exactly what Adam had lost. The Law Covenant had just principles of; Eye for an eye, tooth for a tooth, a blow for a blow.

[Question] What sacrifice did Jesus Christ offer to Yehowah God in mankind's behalf?

[Question] What principle of the Law Covenant foreshadowed this?

3• Eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot. (Exodus 21:24)

[Question] How did the Law Covenant effect justice?

4• Mercy however, exults triumphantly over judgment. Let us say by way of an example, that a man harms you, and you lose a leg in the process. Will the cutting off of that man's leg, though it is just, ever make either of you feel any better? You are justified in asking for his leg in return. However, being merciful is simply superior. It will make you feel better, to let go of your hatred, and your exercise of mercy may even affect the other person favorably.

[Question] What exults over judgment?

[Question] How might we illustrate this superiority of mercy over judgment?

5• People who are merciful, will get a judgment from Yehowah, one that is full of mercy. Conversely, those who require strict justice will themselves be judged by strict justice from Yehowah. Therefore, mercy exults triumphantly over judgment.

[Question] What kind of a judgment will merciful people receive from Yehowah God?

[Question] What kind of a judgment will people demanding strict justice receive from Yehowah God?

6• For the one that does not practice mercy will have his judgment without mercy. Mercy exults triumphantly over judgment. (James 2:13)

[Question] What will the one receive from Yehowah God, who practices his judgments without mercy?

7· We all know of people, who go around just looking for faults in other people. Then when they see a fault, they trumpet it out for the whole world to know about it. This is unmerciful.

[Question] What kind of people do we see everywhere today and in the past throughout human history?

[Question] Are such ones merciful?

8· If faultfinding were to be the judge of us all, then we would all fail in life. Jesus' brother James wrote: The tongue is an unruly and injurious beast, and not one of mankind can get it tamed. (James 3:8) Have you never spoken even one wrong word in your whole life? Really it is what comes out of the mouth that defiles men, because this shows what is in their hearts.

[Question] What would become of us, if we all became like them, as faultfinders?

[Question] What did James state about the tongue, and what should this teach us?

9· Sinful men fail in their speech every day. Do you want to be judged based strictly on justice? Then, doesn't it make more sense to be merciful and forgiving, when others misspeak? Therefore, getting upset about what others say to us, or about us, is not the best course.

[Question] What do sinful men do every day with the tongue?

[Question] How then, should we treat others who might misspeak?

10· Know this, my beloved brothers. Every man must be swift about hearing, slow about speaking, slow about wrath. (James 1:19)

[Question] What should men be quick to do, and slow to do?

11· For man's wrath does not work out God's righteousness. (James 1:20)

[Question] What does the wrath of man not work out?

12· If any man seems to himself to be a formal worshiper and yet does not bridle his tongue, but goes on deceiving his own heart, this man's form of worship is futile. (James 1:26)

[Question] Can a man who cannot bridle his tongue, worship God acceptably?

[Question] Who alone is such a man deceiving?

- 13• For we all stumble many times. If anyone does not stumble in word, this one is a perfect man, able to bridle also his whole body. (James 3:2)**

[Question] What did James say about all men, and so why then, must we be merciful toward the speech of others?

- 14• But the tongue, not one of mankind can get it tamed. An unruly injurious thing, it is full of death-dealing poison. (James 3:8)**

[Question] Can anyone among mankind get the tongue under full control?

[Question] What does James show, that the tongue is full of?

- 15• Have you heard cursing? Why not reply? Do you really want others to hear you talking like that? Many people after hearing cursing, will condemn the person in their hearts, and end their relationship. They have made their judgment.**

[Question] What would be a better course, when we hear someone cursing, than condemnation?

- 16• Yet there is not one person on this earth, who has never sworn before. How unmerciful? Have you, never offended anyone else? If we all acted like that, society as we know it, would cease, and we would all be the poorer for it.**

[Question] Is there anyone on earth, who has never sworn throughout his entire life?

[Question] Is there anyone who has never offended another by what he spoke, either thoughtlessly or intentionally?

[Question] What would become of society, if we were all condemnatory?

- 17• For if you forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. (Matthew 6:14)**

[Question] What does Jesus say will happen if we forgive men their trespasses against us?

- 18• Ought you not, in turn, to have had mercy on your fellow slave, as I also had mercy on you? (Matthew 18:33)**

[Question] How did Jesus illustrate the need for forgiveness of others?

- 19• For the one that does not practice mercy will have his judgment without mercy. Mercy exults triumphantly over judgment. (James 2:13)**

[Question] What kind of a judgment can the man who does not act mercifully toward others, expect from Yehowah God?

- 20• And, look! Just as your soul was great this day in my eyes, so may my soul be great in the eyes of Yehowah, that he may deliver me out of all distress. (**1 Samuel 26:24**)

[Question] How did David touch the heart of Saul, who was trying to kill him, by means of mercy?

- 21• Show me some favor, show me some favor, O you my companions, for God's own hand has touched me. (**Job 19:21**)

[Question] What did Job request from his three troublesome comforters?

- 22• Yehowah himself will guard him and preserve him alive. He will be pronounced happy in the earth, and you cannot possibly give him over to the soul of his enemies. (**Psalms 41:2**)

[Question] How will the righteous one fare at Yehowah's hand?

- 23• He that is showing favor to the lowly one, is lending to Yehowah, and his treatment He will repay to him. (**Proverbs 19:17**)

[Question] Who is the one showing favor to the lowly ones lending to, and who will repay that one?

- 24• Also, continue showing mercy to some that have doubts. (**Jude 1:22**)

[Question] Who also should anointed Christians show mercy to?

Matthew 5:8• Happy are the pure in heart, since they will see God.

- 1• Since the heart is the seat of motivation, being pure in heart means having nothing, but good motives.

[Question] What does it mean to be pure in heart?

- 2• Draw close to God, and he will draw close to you. Cleanse your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you indecisive ones. (**James 4:8**)

[Question] What does James encourage Christians to draw close to?

[Question] How can they do this?

- 3• Yehowah is, and always will be, the sole judge, of what is good. To know what good is, we must thoroughly learn his word

of truth the Bible. It is the only way to learn, all that is good and all that is wise.

[Question] Who is, and always will be, the sole judge of righteousness?

[Question] How can Christians learn about what is righteous before God?

4• He said to him; Why do you ask me about what is good? One there is that is good. If, though, you want to enter into life, observe the commandments continually. (Matthew 19:17)

[Question] Whom did Jesus state was good alone?

5• Then too, more is required, than just knowing goodness. We must take hold of goodness in our hearts. The Bible warns us about our hearts, our seat of motivation. The heart is treacherous, who can know it.

[Question] Is it enough to just understand what righteousness and goodness are?

[Question] Why should Christians be wary of their own hearts?

6• So then making effective changes to our hearts can be a difficult work. It requires objectivity, personal honesty and persistence. Frequently it also requires the help of another understanding person. The best person to assist us in changing our hearts is Yehowah himself.

[Question] What work can prove problematic for us?

[Question] What is required to effectively change the heart's motivation?

[Question] Who will be the best one, to assist us in this endeavor?

7• The heart is more treacherous than anything else and is desperate. Who can know it? (Jeremiah 17:9)

[Question] Can any man truly know and trust his own heart, give reasons?

8• I, Yehowah, am searching the heart, examining the kidneys, even to give to each one according to his ways, according to the fruitage of his dealings. (Jeremiah 17:10)

[Question] Who searches the hearts of all men, and how will Yehowah God repay each and every one?

9• He will not be fooled by our actions alone. He will truly know our deepest thoughts and feelings. Then he can point out to us, where we must direct our thoughts and efforts.

[Question] How deeply does Yehowah God know every man woman and child on earth, and how can this help us, if we are honest with ourselves?

- 10• But he spoke this illustration also to some who trusted in themselves that they were righteous and who considered the rest as nothing. (Luke 18:9)**

[Question] What illustration did Jesus speak to men who trusted in themselves that they were righteous?

- 11• Two men went up into the temple to pray, the one a Pharisee and the other a tax collector. (Luke 18:10)**

[Question] What differentiated the two men in the illustration?

- 12• The Pharisee stood and began to pray these things to himself, O God, I thank you I am not as the rest of men, extortioners, unrighteous, adulterers, or even as this tax collector. (Luke 18:11)**

[Question] How did the Pharisees view himself?

- 13• I fast twice a week, I give the tenth of all things I acquire. (Luke 18:12)**

[Question] How did he pat himself on the back for his works?

- 14• But the tax collector standing at a distance was not willing even to raise his eyes heavenward, but kept beating his breast, saying, O God, be gracious to me a sinner. (Luke 18:13)**

[Question] How did the tax collector feel about his life, and what did he request of God?

- 15• I tell you, this man went down to his home, proved more righteous than that man, because everyone that exalts himself will be humiliated, but he that humbles himself will be exalted. (Luke 18:14)**

[Question] Which man did Yehowah God view as more righteous?

[Question] What will happen to anyone exalting himself?

[Question] What will happen to anyone humbling himself?

- 16• Yehowah God will point these failings out to us, through repeated trials, which test the area, that we are weak in. Thus the tested quality of our faith, works out endurance. Over time we will improve our hearts and then, what was once an issue for us, will be a thing of the past, for we will now have conquered it.**

Draw close to Yehowah and he will draw close to you. The rewards truly are great for all those, who are pure in heart.

[Question] How does Yehowah God point out to us our weaknesses?

[Question] What then happens over time, if we submit to Yehowah God's disciplining efforts toward us?

[Question] What kind of men and women must we become to draw close to Yehowah God?

17· Knowing as you do that this tested quality of your faith works out endurance. (James 1:3)

[Question] What does this tested quality of our faith work out for us?

18· Subject yourselves, therefore, to God, but oppose the Devil, and he will flee from you. (James 4:7)

[Question] Who should we subject ourselves to?

[Question] If we oppose Satan the Devil, what will he do?

19· Draw close to God, and he will draw close to you. Cleanse your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you indecisive ones. (James 4:8)

[Question] What is involved in drawing close to Yehowah God according to James?

20· Anyone innocent in his hands and clean in heart, who has not carried My soul to sheer worthlessness, nor taken an oath deceitfully. (Psalms 24:4)

[Question] Who does the Psalmist show can draw close to Yehowah's tent?

21· God is indeed good to Israel, to those clean in heart. (Psalms 73:1)

[Question] Who is God expressing his goodness towards?

22· The one loving purity of heart, for the charm of his lips the king will be his companion. (Proverbs 22:11)

[Question] Who will come to be the companion of the king?

23· All things are clean to clean persons. But to persons defiled and faithless nothing is clean, but both their minds and their consciences are defiled. (Titus 1:15)

[Question] What things are clean to clean persons?

[Question] What things are defiled to defiled persons, and why?

24· Beloved ones, now we are children of God, but as yet it has

not been made manifest what we shall be. We do know that whenever he is made manifest we shall be like him, because we shall see him just as he is. (1 John 3:2)

[Question] What will anointed Christians eventually become like?

- 25· With the one keeping clean, you will show yourself clean, and with the crooked one, you will act as silly. (2 Samuel 22:27)**

[Question] How will Yehowah God act toward the one keeping himself clean, also with the crooked one?

- 26· You will cause me to know the path of life. Rejoicing to satisfaction is with your face, there is pleasantness at your right hand forever. (Psalms 16:11)**

[Question] What comes for those who seek to walk in Yehowah's way of truth and cleanliness?

- 27· With the one keeping clean you will show yourself clean, and with the crooked one you will show yourself tortuous. (Psalms 18:26)**

[Question] How will Yehowah God act toward the one keeping himself clean, also with the crooked one?

- 28· For at present we see in hazy outline by means of a metal mirror, but then it will be face to face. At present, I know partially, but then I shall know accurately, even as I am accurately known. (1 Corinthians 13:12)**

[Question] How complete is our present knowledge of God?

[Question] How complete is his present knowledge of us?

- 29· Really the objective of this mandate is love out of a clean heart and out of a good conscience, and out of faith without hypocrisy. (1 Timothy 1:5)**

[Question] What is the reason for Christian mandates to righteous conduct?

- 30· Pursue peace with all people, and the sanctification without which no man will see the Lord. (Hebrews 12:14)**

[Question] Will any man who lacks peace and who is defiled, ever come in before God?

- 31· And they will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads. (Revelation 22:4)**

[Question] What will those invited to go to heaven to live with God experience?

Matthew 5:9· **Happy are the peaceable,¹ since they will be called sons of God.**

Footnote: Literally, peacemakers Greek, *ei-re-no-poi-oi'*

1• Peace is something, that all men long for, and yet very few ever attain to it. Being peaceable is a way of life, and an attitude about being. It is a confidence based on knowledge and experience. It is a calm resolution of the problems of yesterday, and a confidence in what the future may bring.

[Question] What is something that all men long for, yet that few obtain?

[Question] How could we define peace?

2• Christians have every reason to be peaceable. Through Yehowah's spirit we can resolve most any situation, ones that occur both past and present. His glorious purpose gives us confidence in an unending future, one that gets richer and richer.

[Question] Why especially do anointed Christian have every reason for peace?

[Question] What confidence does Yehowah God's glorious purpose give us?

3• This he caused to abound toward us in all wisdom and good sense. (Ephesians 1:8)

[Question] How does Yehowah God pass knowledge to his people?

4• In that he made known to us the sacred secret of his will. It is according to his good pleasure which he purposed in himself. (Ephesians 1:9)

[Question] Whose will has Yehowah God made known to anointed Christians?

5• For an administration at the full limit of the appointed times, namely, to gather all things together again in the Christ, the things in the heavens and the things on the earth. Yes, in him. (Ephesians 1:10)

[Question] Who will come to later administer the entire earth under the Kingdom's rule?

6• In union with whom we were also assigned as heirs, in that we were foreordained according to the purpose of him who operates all things according to the way his will counsels. (Ephesians 1:11)

[Question] Who are anointed Christians assigned as joint heirs with, and according to whose will for them?

- 7• This was to the end that now to the governments and the authorities in the heavenly places there might be made known through the congregation the greatly diversified wisdom of God. (**Ephesians 3:10**)

[Question] Who gets to reveal to those in the heavens about God's glorious purpose for the congregation of God?

- 8• According to the eternal purpose that he formed in connection with the Christ, Jesus our Lord. (**Ephesians 3:11**)

[Question] How does the eternal purpose of Yehowah God revolve around Jesus Christ?

- 9• The Bible invites us all to share in the peace of God, a peace that excels all thought. Only those who have Yehowah's spirit can realize this true and lasting peace. This sharing in the spirit can only come to those who develop peace in their own selves.

[Question] What does the Bible invite anointed Christians to share in, and why?

[Question] Who alone can realize this unique peace of mind and spirit?

- 10• Yehowah will in turn draw close to all those who do develop peace, because he is always at peace. This peace is contentment with being. Neither fretting over the past, nor worrying about the future. The reward of peaceableness, is in becoming Sons of God.

[Question] Why will Yehowah God want to be close to men who love peace and develop it toward others?

[Question] What is this peace of God like?

[Question] What is the reward of peaceableness?

- 11• And the peace of God that excels all thought, will guard your hearts and your mental powers, by means of Christ Jesus. (**Philippians 4:7**)

[Question] What peace will guard all anointed Christians minds and hearts?

- 12• On the other hand, the fruitage of the spirit is love, joy, peace, long-suffering, kindness, goodness, faith. (**Galatians 5:22**)

[Question] What is one of the fruits of the Holy Spirit?

- 13• Mildness, self-control. Against such things there is no Law. (**Galatians 5:23**)

[Question] Is there any restriction on the exercise of peace in our relationships to others?

- 14· If possible, as far as it depends upon you, be peaceable with all men. (**Romans 12:18**)

[Question] How should we try our best to act toward others?

- 15· Pursue peace with all people, and the sanctification without which, no man will see the Lord. (**Hebrews 12:14**)

[Question] What must anointed Christians pursue, to come before the very presence of Yehowah God?

- 16· Moreover, the fruit of righteousness has its seed sown under peaceful conditions, for those who are making peace. (**James 3:18**)

[Question] When, and under what conditions, does the seed producing righteousness get sown?

- 17· Now because you are sons, God has sent forth the spirit of his Son into our hearts and it cries out; Abba, Father! (**Galatians 4:6**)

[Question] How does the spirit of Yehowah God act within men?

- 18· Turn away from what is bad, and do what is good. Seek to find peace, and pursue it. (**Psalms 34:14**)

[Question] What should the course of anointed Christians be always?

- 19· I stand for peace, but when I speak, they are for war. (**Psalms 120:7**)

[Question] How did the Psalmist feel when dwelling in the tents of Kedar, a people not his own?

- 20· Deception is in the heart of those fabricating mischief, but those counseling peace have rejoicing. (**Proverbs 12:20**)

[Question] What do those counseling peace receive?

- 21· That you may prove yourselves sons of your Father who is in the heavens, since he makes his sun rise upon wicked people and good, and makes it rain upon righteous people and unrighteous. (**Matthew 5:45**)

[Question] How does Yehowah God deal with good people and bad, thus maintain his own inner peace?

- 22· So, then, let us pursue the things making for peace, and the things that are upbuilding to one another. (**Romans 14:19**)

[Question] What are anointed Christians encouraged to pursue with one another?

23• It is for discipline you are enduring. God is dealing with you as with sons. For what son is he, that a father does not discipline? (Hebrews 12:7)

[Question] Why are men currently enduring through a wicked system of things, and what does this teach us about our God?

Matthew 5:10• Happy are those who have been persecuted for righteousness' sake, since the kingdom of the heavens belongs to them.

1• In the First Century Jesus Christ told his disciples; If they have persecuted me, then they will persecute you also. Persecution, in and of itself, does not make people happy, but enduring a bad circumstance for righteousness sake, does build good qualities in each one of us, which leads to happiness.

[Question] What can followers of Christ expect?

[Question] Does enduring persecution for righteousness sake have its rewards?

2• Bear in mind the word I said to you, a slave is not greater than his master. If they have persecuted me, they will persecute you also. If they have observed my word, they will observe yours also. (John 15:20)

[Question] What is a slave never greater than?

[Question] If men persecuted Jesus, then what should his slaves expect also?

3• Our heavenly father disciplines us, and qualifies us for greater privileges, by the endurance of suffering and of persecution. Why did he let the entire human family fall into a sinful situation? Because Yehowah knew that the endurance of suffering and evil, would bring out the best in some and the worst in others?

[Question] What qualifies us for greater privileges in God's service?

[Question] Why did Yehowah God allow the entire human family fall into sin and death?

4• Permissive parents rarely raise good children. Endurance of many difficulties and trials forces us to **get to work at developing our spiritual nature. Persecution helps us to gauge whether we are in the truth. Not that we should try to seek out persecution, nor to want it, but when it comes our way, we should be glad, because it identifies us as Yehowah's true servants.**

[Question] Who rarely raise fine children?

[Question] What does the endurance of difficulties bring out in us?

[Question] What does persecution help us to understand better, and more clearly?

[Question] What does endurance of it, show that we are?

- 5• Keep testing whether you are in the faith, keep proving what you yourselves are. Or do you not recognize that Jesus Christ is in union with you? Unless you are disapproved. (2 Corinthians 13:5)**

[Question] What counsel did Paul give anointed Christians regarding their faith?

[Question] How does the presence or absence of the Holy Spirit within our lives, demonstrate whether we are in union with Christ or not?

- 6• Consequently let him that thinks he is standing, beware that he does not fall. (1 Corinthians 10:12)**

[Question] What should the one that thinks that he is standing approved before God and Christ, beware of always?

- 7• Yehowah has used this persecution down through the years, to test out all of those of the true seed. If we are undergoing persecution for righteousness sake, we should rejoice, since the Kingdom of the heavens belongs to us.**

[Question] How has Yehowah God used this persecution down through the years, to test his people?

[Question] So then, how should we feel, if we have to undergo persecution?

- 8• Happy are you when people reproach you and persecute you and lyingly say every sort of wicked thing against you for my sake, rejoice and leap for joy, since your reward is great in the heavens, for that is the way, that they persecuted the prophets prior to you. (Matthew 5:11-12)**

[Question] Why should anointed Christians leap for joy when persecuted?

- 9• It doesn't seem like reproach, persecution and lying talk would produce happiness, but this world in which we live truly hates truth. Truth exposes falsehood like sunlight reveals color. This world's ruler, Satan the Devil, hates truth. He does everything possible to contain it, and keep people in a spiritual darkness.**

[Question] What seem quite unlikely on the surface, but what kind of a world do we live in?

[Question] How can we illustrate, how truth exposes the lie?

- 10· This, therefore, I say and bear witness to in the Lord, that you no longer go on walking just as the nations also walk in the unprofitableness of their minds. (Ephesians 4:17)**

[Question] What way of the nations, should anointed Christians not walk in?

- 11· While they are in darkness mentally, and alienated from the life that belongs to God, because of the ignorance that is in them, because of the insensibility of their hearts. (Ephesians 4:18)**

[Question] How do the people of the world walk in this darkness, and why so?

- 12· Having come to be past all moral sense, they gave themselves over to loose conduct to work uncleanness of every sort with greediness. (Ephesians 4:19)**

[Question] What have these ones come to be past, and thus what have they given themselves over to?

- 13· Who will not get a hundredfold now in this period of time, houses and brothers and sisters and mothers and children and fields, with persecutions, and in the coming system of things everlasting life. (Mark 10:30)**

[Question] What did Jesus Christ promise his disciples would gain from following him?

- 14· But even if you should suffer for the sake of righteousness, you are happy. However, the object of their fear do not you fear, neither become agitated. (1 Peter 3:14)**

[Question] How should one suffering for the sake of righteousness feel?

[Question] What fear that people of the world have, should Christians not have?

- 15· Happy are you whenever men hate you, and whenever they exclude you and reproach you, and cast out your name as wicked, for the sake of the Son of man. (Luke 6:22)**

[Question] How should we feel as Christians, when other men exclude us and persecute us?

- 16· Happy is the man that keeps on enduring trial, because on becoming approved, he will receive the crown of life, which Yehowah promised to those who continue loving**

him. (**James 1:12**)

[Question] What will the man who keeps on enduring trial experience later, as the end result of his endurance?

- 17• For what merit is there in it, if, when you are sinning and being slapped, you endure it? But if, when you are doing good and you suffer, you endure it, this is a thing agreeable with God. (1 Peter 2:20)**

[Question] Do we gain any favor with God, if when being slapped for something we did wrong, we endure it?

[Question] Do we gain and favor with God if when being slapped for something we did not do, we endure it?

Matthew 5:11• Happy are you when people reproach you and persecute you and lyingly say every sort of wicked thing against you for my sake.

- 1• Reproach is spoken pressure, whereas persecution is more explicit pressure in action. Lying talk, is a last resort, whenever the first two fail. If we are the objects of this kind of abuse, we truly have sound reasons for happiness, because we have the truth. Examine the Bible record and you will see, that wicked men opposed every one of Yehowah's faithful prophets.**

[Question] How does reproach differ from persecution?

[Question] When also is lying talk used against Christians?

[Question] Why can anointed Christians have sound reason for happiness despite these things?

[Question] What does an examination of the Bible record tell us, about how ancient men of faith were treated by others?

- 2• At hearing this, the Pharisees said; This fellow does not expel the demons except by means of Beelzebub, the ruler of the demons. (Matthew 12:24)**

[Question] How did the Pharisees use lying talk against Jesus?

- 3• Which one of the prophets did your forefathers not persecute? Yes, they killed those who made announcement in advance concerning the coming of the righteous One, whose betrayers and murderers you have now become. (Acts of Apostles 7:52)**

[Question] What did Stephen testify against the Jews of his generation and past generations?

4• They reproached them, persecuted them, and lyingly spoke against them. Yet the **words** of the prophets proved true, time and again. Rather we should take to heart the Bible's fine counsel.

[Question] Though men spoke out against all the prophets, yet whose words proved true over time?

[Question] How then, should we view the fine counsel of the Bible?

5• Woe, whenever all men speak well of you, for things like these are what their forefathers did to the false prophets. **(Luke 6:26)**

[Question] How should we feel if all men speak well of us?

6• So then, if we are experiencing these things, then we should be happy. We have the truth, a truth which comes along with Yehowah's blessing.

[Question] Why then, should anointed Christians be happy?

7• And you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free. **(John 8:32)**

[Question] What did Jesus state, that his followers would come to know, and what would it do for them?

8• Jesus said to him, I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. **(John 14:6)**

[Question] How did Jesus describe himself?

[Question] Does anyone gain approach before Yehowah God except through Christ?

9• However, when that one arrives, the spirit of the truth, he will guide you into all the truth, for he will not speak of his own impulse, but what things he hears he will speak, and he will declare to you the things coming. **(John 16:13)**

[Question] What did Jesus state, that the helper, the Holy Spirit, would guide them into?

10• Some men go to great lengths to make themselves a great name. Yet out of all the men who have come onto the world's scene, are there any so famous as those we know primarily only by their first names, Moses, Abraham, David, Solomon, Ezekiel, Isaiah and Jesus. Truly the reward in the heavens is great for men of faith.

[Question] What do most men today try to make for themselves?

[Question] Who though, are the most famous men who have ever lived?

- 11· And you will be objects of hatred by all people on account of my name, but he that has endured to the end is the one that will be saved. (**Matthew 10:22**)

[Question] What did Jesus state, that his followers would become among the world of mankind, yet who would survive it?

- 12· Happy are you whenever men hate you, and whenever they exclude you and reproach you, and cast out your name as wicked, for the sake of the Son of man. (**Luke 6:22**)

[Question] How should anointed Christians feel, when they are excluded by other men over their faith?

- 13· Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you meet with various trials. (**James 1:2**)

[Question] How did James counsel anointed Christians to react to various trials?

- 14· If you are being reproached for the name of Christ, you are happy, because the spirit of glory, even the spirit of God, is resting upon you. (**1 Peter 4:14**)

[Question] What rests upon men and women, who accept reproach because of Christ?

- 15· Bear in mind the word I said to you, a slave is not greater than his master. If they have persecuted me, they will persecute you also. If they have observed my word, they will observe yours also. (**John 15:20**)

[Question] What is a slave never greater than?

[Question] If Jesus was persecuted, then what should his followers expect also?

- 16· As for all those seeing me, they hold me in derision, they keep opening their mouths wide, they keep wagging their head. (**Psalms 22:7**)

[Question] How did the Psalmist prophesy, about the way that the Messiah and his followers would be treated?

- 17· For on your account I have borne reproach, humiliation has covered my face. (**Psalms 69:7**)

[Question] What was the Psalmist willing to bear in Yehowah God's behalf?

- 18· Now all these things my own hand has made, so that all

these came to be, is the utterance of Yehowah. To this one, then, I shall look, to the one afflicted and contrite in spirit and trembling at my word. (**Isaiah 66:2**)

[Question] Whom does Yehowah God state, that he shall turn to with favor?

- 19• Who will not get a hundredfold now in this period of time, houses and brothers and sisters and mothers and children and fields, with persecutions, and in the coming system of things everlasting life. (**Mark 10:30**)

[Question] What can anointed Christians expect in the coming system of things, that they may have lost within this system of things?

- 20• Happy are you who hunger now, because you will be filled. Happy are you who weep now, because you will laugh. (**Luke 6:21**)

[Question] What promise is made by God to those who hunger and weep now?

- 21• For we have found this man a pestilent fellow and stirring up seditions among all the Jews throughout the inhabited earth and a spearhead of the sect of the Nazarenes. (**Acts of Apostles 24:5**)

[Question] How was the apostle Paul viewed and treated by many of his generation?

- 22• When he arrived, the Jews that had come down from Jerusalem stood round about him, leveling against him many and serious charges, for which they were unable to show evidence. (**Acts of Apostles 25:7**)

[Question] How was the apostle Paul treated by his own countrymen when he returned home many years later to Jerusalem?

- 23• Do not marvel, brothers, that the world hates you. (**1 John 3:13**)

[Question] What should not be surprising to anointed Christians?

Matthew 5:12• Rejoice and leap for joy, since your reward is great in the heavens. For in that way they persecuted the prophets prior to you.

- 1• Persons who possess the above qualities should rejoice in them and leap for joy. Men who served as prophets of Yehowah God in the past were all persecuted for their service to God, and if

Christians are thus persecuted for their faith, then it is an indication that they are doing the right things in life, and that they have God's blessing. The Christian way of service to God is directly opposed to the way of Satan the Devil's wicked world, which exists all around them.

[Question] How should people feel who possess the above qualities?

[Question] How were all of the ancient prophets treated by their peers?

[Question] Why will anointed Christians always be persecuted within this system of things?

- 2• Yet, as for me, I will exult in Yehowah himself. I will be joyful in the God of my salvation. ([Habakkuk 3:18](#))**

[Question] How did faithful Habakkuk feel toward his God?

- 3• Rejoice in that day and leap, for, look! Your reward is great in heaven, for those are the same things their forefathers used to do to the prophets. ([Luke 6:23](#))**

[Question] Why should anointed Christians leap for joy if persecuted?

- 4• These, therefore, went their way from before the Sanhedrin, rejoicing because they had been counted worthy to be dishonored in behalf of his name. ([Acts of Apostles 5:41](#))**

[Question] How did the apostles react to being reproached by the Jewish Sanhedrin?

- 5• And not only that, but let us exult while in tribulations, since we know that tribulation produces endurance. ([Romans 5:3](#))**

[Question] Why should Christians rejoice in tribulation, for what does it produce?

- 6• Moreover, without faith, it is impossible to please him well, for he that approaches God must believe that he is, and that he becomes, the rewarder of those earnestly seeking him. ([Hebrews 11:6](#))**

[Question] Without what is it impossible to please God well, and why?

- 7• But they were continually making jest at the messengers of the true God and despising his words and mocking at his prophets, until the rage of Yehowah came up against his people, until there was no healing. ([2 Chronicles 36:16](#))**

[Question] How did the Jews treat all of God's prophets throughout their history?

- 8· And you say; If we were in the days of our forefathers, we would not be sharers with them in the blood of the prophets. (**Matthew 23:30**)

[Question] What did the Jews of Jesus' generation say about their forefathers?

- 9· Which one of the prophets did your forefathers not persecute? Yes, they killed those who made announcement in advance concerning the coming of the righteous One, whose betrayers and murderers you have now become. (**Acts of Apostles 7:52**)

[Question] What question did Stephen ask of those same men?

[Question] How did he then show, that they had acted in the same way as their forefathers?

- 10· Who killed even the Lord Jesus and the prophets and persecuted us. Furthermore, they are not pleasing God, but are against the interests of all men. (**1 Thessalonians 2:15**)

[Question] What did Paul state about the Jews of his day, and what they had done to anointed Christians?

- 11· They were stoned, they were tried, they were sawn asunder, they died by slaughter with the sword, they went about in sheepskins, in goatskins, while they were in want, in tribulation, under ill-treatment. (**Hebrews 11:37**)

[Question] What did the apostles Paul show, that the ancient prophets had undergone for the truth?

- 12· Brothers, take as a pattern of the suffering of evil and the exercising of patience the prophets, who spoke in the name of Yehowah. (**James 5:10**)

[Question] What are the ancient Hebrew prophets a pattern of for men today?

- 13· And I myself commended rejoicing, because mankind have nothing better under the sun than to eat and drink and rejoice, and that it should accompany them in their hard work for the days of their life, which the true God has given them under the sun. (**Ecclesiastes 8:15**)

[Question] What is the best, that men living today, can expect from life?

- 14· And the disciples continued to be filled with joy and Holy Spirit. (**Acts of Apostles 13:52**)

[Question] How did the disciples who were filled with Holy Spirit respond?

- 15• For though the tribulation is momentary and light, it works out for us, a glory that is of more and more surpassing weight, and is everlasting. (2 Corinthians 4:17)**

[Question] What can we say about the tribulation that Yehowah allows his servants to undergo?

- 16• For you both expressed sympathy for those in prison and joyfully took the plundering of your belongings, knowing you yourselves have a better and an abiding possession. (Hebrews 10:34)**

[Question] What did anointed Christians willingly undergo in behalf of their faith?

- 17• Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you meet with various trials. (James 1:2)**

[Question] How did James counsel anointed Christians to deal with various trials?

- 18• But even if you should suffer for the sake of righteousness, you are happy. However, the object of their fear do not you fear, neither become agitated. (1 Peter 3:14)**

[Question] How should anointed Christians feel, if they must undergo suffering for their faith?

Matthew 5:13• You are the salt of the earth. But if the salt loses its strength, how will its saltiness be restored? It is no longer usable for anything, but to be thrown outside to be trampled on by men.

- 1• Christians are the salt of the earth, that which preserves it and keeps it from spoiling, or going bad completely. Yet if they themselves were to accept wicked practices, and no longer be a preserving influence among mankind, then would they become useful for any good purpose. They would then only be suitable for being disposed of, like salt is used for melting snow under men's feet.**

[Question] How can we understand that anointed Christians are the salt of the earth?

[Question] What would they cease to be, if they accepted wicked practices themselves?

[Question] What then, would they only be suitable for?

- 2• Salt is fine. But if ever the salt loses its strength, with what**

will you season it itself? Have salt in yourselves, and keep peace between one another. (Mark 9:50)

[Question] What question did Jesus ask about salt?

[Question] What should anointed Christians have within themselves, and how will this become manifest?

3• It is suitable neither for soil nor for manure. People throw it outside. Let him that has ears to listen, listen. (Luke 14:35)

[Question] What only can be done with salt, that loses its strength?

[Question] What will happen to anointed Christians, if they lose their moral strength?

4• And you must bring them near before Yehowah, and the priests must throw salt upon them and offer them up as a whole burnt offering to Yehowah. (Ezekiel 43:24)

[Question] What was part of every offering at the temple?

5• Salt, to be sure, is fine. But if even the salt loses its strength, with what will it be seasoned? (Luke 14:34)

[Question] What would salt be any good for, if it lost its strength to be a preservative?

6• Let your utterance be always with graciousness, seasoned with salt, so as to know how you ought to give an answer to each one. (Colossians 4:6)

[Question] How should every utterance of a Christian be spoken, and what will this practice teach us?

Matthew 5:14• You are the light of the world. A city cannot be hid when situated upon a mountain.

1• Again Jesus likens his Christian followers to light. They are to be like a shining light in the world darkness around them, by shedding glorious spiritual light about God's purposes and his way of righteousness, to the men who are under Satan the Devil's dominion.

[Question] What does Jesus liken his anointed Christians followers to?

[Question] How can they manifest this light to others, for whose dominion are they currently living under?

2• Again he likens them to a city placed upon a mountain, since it is high up, there is no way to hide the light coming from it. They also need to take a prominent position within the world

around them, so that their preaching and fine Christian works are seen by others, for this will influence many for good.

[Question] What does Jesus Christ liken anointed Christians to?

[Question] What does this say about how anointed Christians should view their enlightening work of Kingdom preaching of the Good News of God?

- 3• Pay attention to me, O my people, and you national group of mine, to me give ear. For from me, a Law itself will go forth, and my judicial decision, I shall cause to repose even as a light to the peoples. (**Isaiah 51:4**)

[Question] What does Yehowah God himself call his Law and judicial decisions?

- 4• Now this is the basis for judgment, that the light has come into the world, but men have loved the darkness rather than the light, for their works were wicked. (**John 3:19**)

[Question] What did Jesus Christ state was going to be the basis for judgment of the world?

[Question] What have men shown, that they loved more than the light?

- 5• Therefore Jesus spoke again to them, saying; I am the light of the world. He that follows me will by no means walk in darkness, but will possess the light of life. (**John 8:12**)

[Question] Who is the light of the world?

[Question] What will anyone following closely behind Christ, not walk in?

- 6• As long as I am in the world, I am the world's light. (**John 9:5**)

[Question] Who was the world's light, while he was in the world?

[Question] Who is now, by following his way closely?

- 7• While you have the light, exercise faith in the light, in order to become sons of light. Jesus spoke these things and went off and hid from them. (**John 12:36**)

[Question] What must anointed Christians exercise, to become sons of light?

- 8• Do not become unevenly yoked with unbelievers. For what fellowship do righteousness and lawlessness have? Or what sharing does light have with darkness? (**2 Corinthians 6:14**)

[Question] Whom should anointed Christians avoid becoming unevenly yoked to, and why?

[Question] Can anointed Christians share closely with wicked people, and not be harmed by this association, should they?

- 9• But the path of the righteous ones, is like the bright light that is getting lighter and lighter, until the day is firmly established. (**Proverbs 4:18**)

[Question] What is the path of the righteous one like, and when will it become firmly established?

- 10• Among whom the god of this system of things has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, that the illumination of the glorious Good News about the Christ, who is the image of God, might not shine through. (**2 Corinthians 4:4**)

[Question] What had Satan the Devil done to the minds of the unbelievers, and what does he want to hide from them?

- 11• That you may come to be blameless and innocent, children of God without a blemish, in among a crooked and twisted generation, among whom, you are shining as illuminators in the world. (**Philippians 2:15**)

[Question] What does Yehowah God want his spiritual children to become like, within this world?

[Question] How must they shine before other men, and what way must they light up?

- 12• These are symbolized by the two olive trees and the two lampstands, and are standing before the Lord of the earth. (**Revelation 11:4**)

[Question] What symbolized ones who faithfully witness, and let their lights shine in this darkened world?

Matthew 5:15• People light a lamp and set it, not under the measuring basket, but upon the lampstand, and it shines upon all those in the house.

- 1• Next Jesus states, that when setting out a light, men set it on high, as upon a lampstand, so that its light will shine out over a greater area and light up the entire house. To hide the light under a measuring basket would be counterproductive. Likewise their lights need to be put on high where others will see them, and this is done through public preaching and fine works.

[Question] What do men do with a light when they light it, and why?

[Question] What would be counterproductive?

[Question] What then, must anointed Christians do with their knowledge of God and Christ?

- 2• **And he went on to say to them; A lamp is not brought to be put under a measuring basket or under a bed, is it? It is brought to be put upon a lampstand, is it not? (Mark 4:21)**

[Question] How did Jesus Christ illustrate how anointed Christians should use their knowledge and insight into God's will for mankind?

- 3• **After lighting a lamp, a person puts it, not in a vault nor under a measuring basket, but upon the lampstand, that those stepping in may behold the light. (Luke 11:33)**

[Question] What do men do after lighting a lamp, where is it placed?

- 4• **No one, after lighting a lamp, covers it with a vessel or puts it underneath a bed, but he puts it on a lampstand, that those stepping in may behold the light. (Luke 8:16)**

[Question] Do men place light under their beds to light up a room?

[Question] Why then, is a light placed on high?

- 5• **And the third angel blew his trumpet. And a great star burning as a lamp fell from heaven, and it fell upon a third of the rivers and upon the fountains of waters. (Revelation 8:10)**

[Question] What great burning light does the Revelation vision detail, and where did it fall upon?

Matthew 5:16•• Likewise let your light shine before men, that they may see your fine works and give glory to your Father who is in the heavens.

- 1• **Jesus now gets to the point, that his Christian disciples need to let their light shine before other men, through preaching publicly and through fine works, that others may see this light, and give glory to God in heaven. This light also relates to their spiritual understanding through God's Holy Spirit, which enlightens them about God and his true nature, and which men of the world do not understand.**

[Question] How then, did Jesus make his point clear, and how should this apply today?

- 2• **For you were once darkness, but you are now light in connection with the Lord. Go on walking as children of light. (Ephesians 5:8)**

[Question] What were anointed Christians once within their lives, but what are they after receiving the Holy Spirit of anointing?

[Question] How then, should they walk after that?

- 3• That you may come to be blameless and innocent, children of God without a blemish, in among a crooked and twisted generation, among whom you are shining as illuminators in the world. (Philippians 2:15)**

[Question] What does Yehowah God want all his spiritual children to be like within this Satan the Devil's world, a world of spiritual darkness?

- 4• But you, are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for special possession, that you should declare abroad, the excellencies of the one that called you out of darkness into his wonderful light. (1 Peter 2:9)**

[Question] What are anointed Christians before their God, and what have they been called out of?

- 5• Jesus replied to them; I displayed to you many fine works from the Father. For which of those works are you stoning me? (John 10:32)**

[Question] How did Jesus testify about his own life course, yet how was he treated?

- 6• My Father is glorified in this, that you keep bearing much fruit and prove yourselves my disciples. (John 15:8)**

[Question] What truly glorifies God?

- 7• For the fruitage of the light consists of every sort of goodness and righteousness and truth. (Ephesians 5:9)**

[Question] What does the fruitage of the light consist of?

- 8• Maintain your conduct fine among the nations, that, in the thing in which they are speaking against you as evildoers, they may, as a result of your fine works, of which they are eyewitnesses, glorify God in the day for his inspection. (1 Peter 2:12)**

[Question] What should anointed Christians maintain among the nations of the world, and what can this lead to for them?

- 9• Arise, O woman, shed forth light, for your light has come and upon you the very glory of Yehowah has shone forth. (Isaiah 60:1)**

[Question] What does God's woman do, when her light comes upon her from God?

- 10• For you were bought with a price. By all means, glorify God in the body of you people. (1 Corinthians 6:20)**

[Question] Since anointed Christians were bought with a repurchase price that is precious, how should they respond?

- 11· Therefore, whether you are eating or drinking or doing anything else, do all things for God's glory. (1 Corinthians 10:31)**

[Question] What should govern everything that an anointed Christian does?

- 12· Through the proof that this ministry gives, they glorify God, because you are submissive to the Good News about the Christ, as you publicly declare you are, and because you are generous in your contribution to them, and to all. (2 Corinthians 9:13)**

[Question] How did the fine works of men he preached to, give proof of the ministry of the apostle Paul?

- 13· In the same way also, the fine works are publicly manifest, and those that are otherwise, cannot be kept hid. (1 Timothy 5:25)**

[Question] What happens to the fine works of anointed Christians over time, even though done in secret?

- 14· Not committing theft, but exhibiting good fidelity to the full, so that they may adorn the teaching of our Savior, God, in all things. (Titus 2:10)**

[Question] How should anointed Christians try to add to the beauty of the truth?

- 15· You are worthy, Yehowah, even our God, to receive the glory and the honor and the power, because you created all things, and because of your will, they existed and were created. (Revelation 4:11)**

[Question] Why is Yehowah God worthy of all our devotion?

Matthew 5:17· Do not think I came to destroy the Law or the Prophets. I came, not to destroy, but to fulfill.

- 1· Jesus now makes a powerful statement. He did not come to destroy the Law Covenant or the Prophets, but rather to fulfill them. Anointed Christians who will come forth as a result of his ministry in Israel, will gain through anointing by the Holy Spirit, the means by which they can gain success in combating the desires of the flesh and fulfill the Law Covenant, by becoming obedient from the heart through the spirit.**

[Question] What is the purpose of Christianity in respect to the Law Covenant and the Prophets?

[Question] What do anointed Christians gain, that enables them to live according to the principles of the Law Covenant, and the writings of the Prophets successfully?

[Question] How then, will Christ and his true followers, be the ones to fulfill the Law Covenant and the Prophets?

- 2• Do we, then, abolish Law by means of our faith? Never may that happen! On the contrary, we establish Law. (Romans 3:31)**

[Question] Does a Christian's faith then abolish Law, or establish it?

- 3• Then he started to say to them; Today this scripture that you just heard is fulfilled. (Luke 4:21)**

[Question] How did Jesus show from the outset, that he came to fulfill the Holy Scriptures?

- 4• The Law of Yehowah is perfect, bringing back the soul. The reminder of Yehowah is trustworthy, making the inexperienced one wise. (Psalms 19:7)**

[Question] What can be said of the Law of Yehowah God and his reminders through the prophets?

- 5• And he stayed there until the decease of Herod, for that to be fulfilled which was spoken by Yehowah through his prophet, saying; Out of Egypt I called my son. (Matthew 2:15)**

[Question] How were many of the events within Jesus' life in fulfillment of the Bible?

- 6• In reply Jesus said to him; Let it be, this time, for in that way it is suitable for us to carry out all that is righteous. Then he quit preventing him. (Matthew 3:15)**

[Question] Why did Jesus willingly submit to baptism, for what did he say was a suitable course for all?

- 7• True, the Son of man is going away, just as it is written concerning him, but woe to that man through whom the Son of man is betrayed! It would have been finer for him if that man had not been born. (Matthew 26:24)**

[Question] How were the scriptures fulfilled by the betrayal of Christ?

- 8• Indeed, it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away, than for one particle of a letter of the Law to go unfulfilled. (Luke 16:17)**

[Question] What would sooner pass away, than for a particle of a letter from the Law to pass away?

- 9• If he called **gods**, those against whom the word of God came, and yet the Scripture cannot be nullified. (**John 10:35**)

[Question] Can the scriptures ever be nullified?

- 10• If truly God is one, who will declare circumcised people righteous as a result of faith, and uncircumcised people righteous by means of their faith. (**Romans 3:30**)

[Question] What question did Paul feel the need to ask about circumcision?

- 11• For Christ is the end of the Law, so that everyone exercising faith, may have righteousness. (**Romans 10:4**)

[Question] What did Christ bring to an end, and what did he then offer to mankind through him?

[Question] Did the ending of the requirements and penalties of the Law Covenant, mean that the principles underlying it also ended?

- 12• Consequently the Law has become our tutor leading to Christ, that we might be declared righteous due to faith. (**Galatians 3:24**)

[Question] What then, did the Law Covenant become like, toward anointed Christians, who came forth from the Jewish nation?

[Question] How though, were they to be declared righteous?

- 13• But when the full limit of the time arrived, God sent forth his Son, who came to be out of a woman, and who came to be under Law. (**Galatians 4:4**)

[Question] What was Jesus under, during his entire life on earth?

Matthew 5:18• For truly I say to you, that sooner would heaven and earth pass away, than for one smallest letter, or one particle of a letter, to pass away from the Law by any means, and not all things take place.

- 1• Jesus then showed, that sooner would heaven and earth pass away, than for one smallest letter, or particle of the Law pass away, and not all things written take place. This means that the righteousness the Law led mankind to, will be realized by anointed Christians through their love of the Holy Spirit within them, and that all the things written in the Prophets will also

come to complete fulfillment. Not one word of any of it, will by any means ever fail.

[Question] What doing Jesus show would sooner pass away than for a particle of a letter of the Law Covenant to pass away without being fulfilled?

[Question] What then, about the Law Covenant, will be fulfilled in anointed Christians?

2• Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will by no means pass away. (Matthew 24:35)

[Question] What would, and would not, pass away then?

3• Indeed, it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one particle of a letter of the Law to go unfulfilled. (Luke 16:17)

[Question] What would be easier to pass away, than for any smallest part of the Law to go unfulfilled?

4• Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will by no means pass away. (Luke 21:33)

[Question] What would pass away, and what would not pass away?

5• The green grass has dried up, the blossom has withered, but as for the word of our God, it will last to time indefinite. (Isaiah 40:8)

[Question] What come and goes, and what lasts forever?

6• So my word that goes forth from my mouth will prove to be. It will not return to me without results, but it will certainly do that, in which I have delighted, and it will have certain success, in that for which I have sent it. (Isaiah 55:11)

[Question] What did Yehowah God state through Isaiah about his word and its reliableness?

7• Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will not pass away. (Mark 13:31)

[Question] What would and would not pass away?

Matthew 5:19• Whoever, therefore, breaks one of these least commandments and teaches mankind to that effect, he will be called **least in relation to the kingdom of the heavens. As for anyone who does them and teaches them, this one will be called **great** in relation to the kingdom of the heavens.**

1• Many professed Christians today think that the Law Covenant passed away, and nothing about it matters anymore to anointed Christians. Nothing could be farther from the truth.

[Question] What is the mindset of most Christians in the world of today?

[Question] Is this correct thinking in light of Jesus' words above?

2• Jesus Christ showed that anyone who would teach mankind to that effect, would become least in the Kingdom of the heavens. For they would not get the sense of Christianity, nor be working along with Yehowah God's unfolding purpose.

[Question] Who did Jesus Christ state would become the least one in the Kingdom of the heavens, and why?

3• Conversely he showed that anyone who does them and teaches them, will be called great in relation to the Kingdom of the heavens. The Law Covenant was a system of punishments for breaking the principles of righteousness, also it defined what sin is.

[Question] Whom did Jesus show would become the greatest one in the Kingdom of the heavens?

[Question] What did the Law Covenant punish men for, and what did it also define for mankind?

4• Anointed Christians are no longer under the Law because its punishments have been abolished, but all true Christian teaching upholds all of the tenets and principles that are the Law. Anyone who teaches along with these divine principle and tenets, will be considered **great within the Kingdom of the heavens. Anyone who diminishes them, will be called **least** in relation to the Kingdom of the heavens.**

[Question] How so, are anointed Christians no longer under the Law Covenant, yet what are they still under, and will always be under?

[Question] Who then, will be considered great in relation to the Kingdom of the heavens?

[Question] Who also will be called the least one?

5• For whoever observes all the Law, but makes a false step in one point, he has become an offender against them all. (James 2:10)

[Question] What did a man become by breaking any of the laws of the Law Covenant?

6• There is where your weeping and the gnashing of your teeth

will be, when you see Abraham and Isaac and Jacob and all the prophets in the kingdom of God, but yourselves thrown outside. **(Luke 13:28)**

[Question] What would this lead to, for those who diminished Jesus words?

- 7• Teaching them **to observe all the things I have commanded you**. And, look! I am with you all the days until the conclusion of the system of things. **(Matthew 28:20)**

[Question] What did Jesus command his disciples to teach, and to observe?

- 8• Truly I say to you people, among those born of women there has not been raised up a greater than John the Baptist, but a person that is a lesser one in the kingdom of the heavens is greater than he is. **(Matthew 11:11)**

[Question] Who was John the Baptist greater than, and does that include men like Moses, Abraham, David and Noah?

[Question] Is any and every true anointed Christian, greater than any of these men?

- 9• Yehowah now said to Moses; Come up to me in the mountain and stay there, as I want to give you the stone tablets and the Law and the commandment that I must write, in order to teach them. **(Exodus 24:12)**

[Question] Why was Moses told to go up into the holy mountain?

- 10• And you must keep the whole commandment that I am commanding you today, in order, that you may grow strong and may indeed enter in and take possession of the land, to which you are crossing to take possession of it. **(Deuteronomy 11:8)**

[Question] What part of the commandments of God was Moses told by God to keep, with what resulting for them, if they did?

- 11• By relationship with him, you were also circumcised with a circumcision performed without hands, by the stripping off the body of the flesh, by the circumcision that belongs to the Christ. **(Colossians 2:11)**

[Question] What circumcision do anointed Christians undergo?

Matthew 5:20• For I say to you, that if your righteousness does not abound more than that of the scribes and Pharisees, you will by no means enter into the kingdom of the heavens.

1• The Pharisees and Sadducees were the two chief religious parties that ruled the Jewish nation and they were sticklers for the Law Covenant and its minutest details. Yet they failed to actually live up to the tenets and principles of that Law Covenant. They were thus hypocritical men, who put on a show of righteousness, but did not have righteous hearts.

[Question] Who were the Sadducees and Pharisees, and what kind of men were they according to the Bible record?

2• Jesus showed that a man's righteousness would have to far exceed the Pharisees' righteousness, for him to enter into the Kingdom of the heavens. Yehowah God expects, that we love what he loves, and that we hate what he hates, right from the heart, and anyone not doing so is not approved by him.

[Question] What did Jesus Christ state about a man's righteousness in relation to them?

[Question] What does Yehowah God expect from men who serve him?

3• It is in vain that they keep worshipping me, because they teach commands of men as doctrines. (Matthew 15:9)

[Question] Why did Yehowah God state that many of these men worshiped him in vain?

4• Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! Because you give the tenth of the mint and the dill and the cumin, but you have disregarded the weightier matters of the Law, namely, justice and mercy and faithfulness. These things it was binding to do, yet not to disregard the other things. (Matthew 23:23)

[Question] What did they give to God according to his requirements, and what did they refuse to give?

5• But woe to you Pharisees, because you give the tenth of the mint and the rue and of every other vegetable, but you pass by the justice and the love of God! These things you were under obligation to do, but those other things, not to omit. (Luke 11:42)

[Question] What did Jesus Christ state, that they would experience at God's hand, because of their actions?

6• And said; Truly I say to you, unless you turn around and become as young children, you will by no means enter into the kingdom of the heavens. (Matthew 18:3)

[Question] What did Jesus state, that any who wanted to become one of his disciples must become like before himself and Yehowah God?

- 7• Jesus answered; Most truly I say to you, unless anyone is born from water and spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. (**John 3:5**)

[Question] What must an anointed Christian be born from, to enter into the Kingdom of the heavens?

- 8• Take good care not to practice your righteousness in front of men in order to be observed by them, otherwise you will have no reward with your Father who is in the heavens. (**Matthew 6:1**)

[Question] What reward would there be from God toward men who practiced righteousness, only, so that other men could observe them doing it?

Matthew 5:21•• You heard that it was said to those of ancient times, you must not murder, but whoever commits a murder will be accountable to the court of justice.

- 1• Under the Law Covenant a man was not to murder another. Anyone committing murder under that Law Covenant was accountable to the court of justice, this usually being the priests of the nation or even the High Priest.

[Question] What would be the penalty for murder under the Law Covenant?

- 2• Anyone shedding man's blood, by man will his own blood be shed, for in God's image he made man. (**Genesis 9:6**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise to anyone shedding a fellow man's blood?

- 3• You must not murder. (**Exodus 20:13**)

[Question] What is one of the Ten Commandments?

- 4• You must not murder. (**Deuteronomy 5:17**)

[Question] What must men not do toward one another?

- 5• And in case a man strikes any soul of mankind fatally, he should be put to death without fail. (**Leviticus 24:17**)

[Question] What was the penalty for deliberate murder?

- 6• And you must go to the priests, the Levites, and to the judge who will be acting in those days, and you must make

inquiry, and they must hand down to you the word of the judicial decision. (Deuteronomy 17:9)

[Question] Who in the nation of Israel was responsible for maintaining the judicial system?

- 7• One who strikes a man so that he actually dies, is to be put to death without fail. (Exodus 21:12)**

[Question] What was to be done to the man striking another man to death?

- 8• You know the commandments. Do not murder. Do not commit adultery. Do not steal. Do not bear false witness. Do not defraud. Honor your father and mother. (Mark 10:19)**

[Question] What commandments did Jesus delineate to a man, as being ones he must obey to get life?

- 9• Everyone who hates his brother is a manslayer, and you know that no manslayer has everlasting life remaining in him. (1 John 3:15)**

[Question] What is everyone who hates his brother, and does such a person have everlasting life remaining in them?

Matthew 5:22• However, I say to you, that everyone who continues wrathful with his brother, will be accountable to the court of justice, but whoever addresses his brother with an unspeakable word of contempt,¹ will be accountable to the Supreme Court.² Whereas whoever says; You despicable fool! Will be liable to the fiery Gehenna.³

Footnote: An unspeakable word of contempt Greek, *Rha-ka'*; J¹⁷, *Re-qa'*, an Aramaic word of contempt

Footnote: Or, the Sanhedrin

Footnote: Gehenna Greek. (*ge'en-nan*); J¹⁻¹⁴, 16-18 (Hebrew), (*geh-hin-nom'*, valley of Hinnom) The place for burning refuse outside of Jerusalem. See Appendix 4C

- 1• Jesus now took this further than the Law Covenant, which only forbade murder. He showed that anyone who hated his brother and who continues wrathful or holds onto his anger toward him, perhaps expressing this anger through unspeakable words of contempt for him, calling him a despicable fool, he too would be liable to eternal destruction.**

[Question] How did the commandments of Jesus Christ go further than the Law Covenant?

2• Gehenna was a term for the garbage dump just outside the walls of Jerusalem, and there vile criminals were tossed, not being considered worthy of a decent burial, and they were burned there with fire and sulphur to completely destroy them. **[See Also; Know Your Bible Under Gehenna for a complete explanation of Gehenna]**

[Question] What was Gehenna to the minds of Jesus' listeners, and what did it represent?

3• Be **wrathful**, and yet do not sin. Let the sun not set with you in a provoked state. **(Ephesians 4:26)**

[Question] How should Christians treat real reasons for anger?

4• But now, really, put them all away from you, wrath, anger, badness, abusive speech, and obscene talk out of your mouth. **(Colossians 3:8)**

[Question] What should anointed Christians put far away from them?

5• Know this, my beloved **brothers**. Every man must be swift about hearing, slow about speaking, slow about wrath. **(James 1:19)**

[Question] What things should we be slow about, and what things should we be swift about?

6• You have condemned, you have murdered the righteous one. Is he not opposing you? **(James 5:6)**

[Question] How does Yehowah God feel about men, who would murder the righteous ones?

7• Everyone who hates his **brother** is a manslayer, and you know that no manslayer has everlasting life remaining in him. **(1 John 3:15)**

[Question] What is everyone who hates his brother, and can everlasting life remain in such a man?

8• And he made unfit for worship, Topheth, which is in the valley of the sons of Hinnom, that no one might make his son or his daughter pass through the fire to Molech. **(2 Kings 23:10)**

[Question] What was the valley of Gehenna used for in ancient Israel?

9• And they have built the high places of Topheth, which is in the valley of the son of Hinnom, in order to burn their sons and their daughters in the fire, **a thing that I had not commanded**, and that had not come up into my heart.

(Jeremiah 7:31)

[Question] What vile practice was carried on there before the time of Josiah?

- 10· And do not become fearful of those who kill the body, but cannot kill the soul. Rather be in fear of him, that can destroy both soul and body in Gehenna. (Matthew 10:28)**

[Question] Whom should Christians be fearful of, and why?

[Question] Whom should they not become fearful of, and why?

- 11· But I will indicate to you whom to fear. Fear him who after killing has authority to throw into Gehenna. Yes, I tell you, fear this One. (Luke 12:5)**

[Question] Why should men fear Yehowah God, for what authority does he have as mankind's creator?

- 12· Until the anger of your brother turns away from you, and he has forgotten what you have done to him. And I shall certainly send and get you from there. Why should I be bereaved also of both of you in one day? (Genesis 27:45)**

[Question] How did Rachel try to avert disaster with her two sons Jacob and Esau?

- 13· And the boundary went up to the valley of the son of Hinnom to the slope of the Jebusite at the south, that is to say, Jerusalem, and the boundary went up to the top of the mountain that faces the valley of Hinnom to the west, which is at the extremity of the low plain of Rephaim to the north. (Joshua 15:8)**

[Question] Where was the valley of Gehenna, or Hinnon, located in relation to Jerusalem?

- 14· And the boundary went down to the extremity of the mountain that faces the valley of the son of Hinnom, which is in the low plain of Rephaim to the north, and it went down to the valley of Hinnom, to the slope of the Jebusite on the south, and went down to En-rogel. (Joshua 18:16)**

[Question] What areas bounded upon the valley of Gehenna?

- 15· For they have committed adultery, and there is blood on their hands, and with their dungy idols they have committed adultery. And, besides that, their sons, whom they had borne to me, they made pass through the fire to**

them as food. (**Ezekiel 23:37**)

[Question] What did the evil people do to their own sons and daughters due to idol worship in Israel, in this valley?

- 16· Also, if your eye is making you stumble, tear it out and throw it away from you. It is finer for you to enter one-eyed into life, than to be thrown with two eyes into the **fiery Gehenna**. (**Matthew 18:9**)

[Question] How should we treat one of our members, that causes us to sin?

[Question] What would it mean to be thrown into Gehenna?

- 17· You desire, and yet you do not have. You go on murdering and coveting, and yet you are not able to obtain. You go on fighting and waging war. You do not have, because of your not asking. (**James 4:2**)

[Question] Why do many murder and steal and oppress others?

- 18· And death and Hades were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire. (**Revelation 20:14**)

[Question] What will eventually be thrown into the Lake of Fire?

[Question] What does the Bible say, that the Lake of Fire represents?

- 19· But as for the cowards and those without faith and those who are disgusting in their filth and murderers and fornicators and those practicing spiritism and idolaters and all the liars, their portion **will** be in the lake that burns with fire and sulphur. This means the second death. (**Revelation 21:8**)

[Question] What kinds of persons will be thus thrown into the Lake of Fire, or eternal destruction?

Matthew 5:23· If, then, you are bringing your gift to the altar, and you there remember, that your brother has something against you.

- 1· Jesus now changes his subject and shows, that if we are making gifts to Yehowah God, like the communion sacrifices that were presented to Yehowah God under the Law Covenant, and which sacrifices denoted a peaceful relationship between a man and his God, that we should also be at peace with our fellow man before doing this.

[Question] What subject does Jesus now take up, and how should we make gifts to God?

- 2• Three times in the year every male of yours should appear before Yehowah your God in the place that he will choose. In the festival of the unfermented cakes, and in the festival of weeks, and in the festival of booths, and none should appear before Yehowah empty-handed. (Deuteronomy 16:16)**

[Question] What were the Israelites to bring forth to Yehowah God at each of the yearly festivals?

- 3• Blind ones! Which, in fact, is greater, the gift, or the altar that sanctifies the gift? (Matthew 23:19)**

[Question] What did the spiritually blind religious leaders of Israel think was more important than the altar?

- 4• You must not hate your brother in your heart. You should by all means reprove your associate, that you may not bear sin along with him. (Leviticus 19:17)**

[Question] What did the Law Covenant command men not to think?

[Question] What were men to do under the Law Covenant when others sinned in front of them?

- 5• And when you stand praying, forgive whatever you have against anyone, in order, that your Father who is in the heavens may also forgive you your trespasses. (Mark 11:25)**

[Question] What should we always do in prayer when approaching Yehowah God?

- 6• Pay attention to yourselves. If your brother commits a sin give him a rebuke, and if he repents forgive him. (Luke 17:3)**

[Question] What should Christians do, if a brother commits a sin against them?

[Question] What must they also do, if he takes the counsel to heart and asks for forgiveness?

- 7• Attribute to Yehowah the glory of his name, carry a gift and come in before him. Bow down to Yehowah in holy adornment. (1 Chronicles 16:29)**

[Question] What should men attribute to Yehowah God, and what should we offer before him?

Matthew 5:24 • **Leave your gift there in front of the altar, and go away. First make your peace with your brother, and then, when you have come back, offer up your gift.**

1• If a Christian comes to Yehowah's altar with such a gift, and he is not at peace with all his brothers, then he should leave the gift there and go off and make peace with his brothers first, and then he can come forth to offer his gift to God. Therefore a principle is established, that we must be at peace among ourselves, to be at peace with Yehowah God.

[Question] Would offering a gift to Yehowah God be acceptable, if a brother had something against us, that was unresolved?

[Question] What then, precedes peace with God?

2• Moreover, if your brother commits a sin, go lay bare his fault between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have gained your brother. (Matthew 18:15)

[Question] How should we treat a brother, who might sin against us?

[Question] What should be the object of this?

3• But let him turn away from what is bad and do what is good, let him seek peace and pursue it. (1 Peter 3:11)

[Question] What should anointed Christians turn away from, and what should they be seeking always?

4• Therefore I desire that in every place the men carry on prayer, lifting up loyal hands, apart from wrath and debates. (1 Timothy 2:8)

[Question] How did Paul counsel Timothy to live among his anointed Christian brothers?

5• If anyone makes the statement. I love God, and yet is hating his brother, he is a liar. For he who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot be loving God, whom he has not seen. (1 John 4:20)

[Question] What is a man who states, that he loves God, but who himself hates his brother, and why so?

6• And now take for yourselves seven bulls and seven rams and go to my servant Job, and you men must offer up a burnt sacrifice in your own behalf. Job, my servant, will himself pray for you. His face only I shall accept so as not to commit disgraceful folly with you, for you have not spoken concerning me what is truthful, as has my servant Job. (Job 42:8)

[Question] How did Yehowah God make Job a priest to his three companions after he exonerated Job before them?

Matthew 5:25 **Be about settling matters quickly with the one complaining against you at Law, while you are with him on the way there, that somehow the complainant may not turn you over to the judge, and the judge to the court attendant, and you get thrown into prison.**

1• Jesus' counsel to those who have strong disagreements, is to be speedy and agreeable about settling matters with their brothers. Everyone who takes a matter to court, thinks that they are in the right, or else they would not go before the judge to get a judgment.

[Question] What is Jesus' counsel to those having disagreements?

[Question] What does everyone think who willingly goes to court against another?

[Question] Yet are both parties ever right in the eyes of the court?

2• In any case though only one is right, and many times the wrong party does not clearly see his wrongdoing. Sometimes even both parties are wrong. The wise thing for Christians to do is to settle these matters themselves, then there is no risk of being tossed into prison.

[Question] What does the wrong party rarely see clearly?

[Question] What would be the truly wise course then, considering that we might be the one in the wrong?

3• For example, when you are going with your adversary at Law to a ruler, get to work while on the way, to rid yourself of the dispute with him, that he may never hale you before the judge, and the judge deliver you to the court officer, and the court officer throw you into prison. (Luke 12:58)

[Question] How did Jesus counsel us to rid ourselves of the issue before even going to court, for what might be the unforeseen outcome?

4• But there was a widow in that city and she kept going to him, saying, See that I get justice from my adversary at Law. (Luke 18:3)

[Question] What did a widow in one of Jesus' parables demand of the unrighteous judge?

5• Whom I would not answer, even though I were really in the right. Of my opponent-at-law I would implore favor. (Job

9:15)

[Question] How did Job himself righteously deal with his opponent at law?

- 6· Take this action then, my son, and deliver yourself, for you have come into the palm of your fellowman. Go humble yourself and storm your fellowman with importunities. (Proverbs 6:3)**

[Question] What does the Proverb encourage us to do, in any such case?

- 7· Do not go forth to conduct a legal case hastily, that it may not be a question of what you will do in the culmination of it when your fellowman now humiliates you. (Proverbs 25:8)**

[Question] What could always result from any legal case, and so what is the wise course to take, before that happens?

Matthew 5:26· I say to you for a fact, you will certainly not come out from there until you have paid over the last coin of very little value.¹

Footnote: Literally, the last quadrans; one sixty-fourth of a denarius See Appendix 8A

- 1· Yet if the man allows the matter to go to court before a judge, and the judgment goes against him, then he will be required to make even a greater expenditure before the matter is really settled. How much wiser to settle the matter by oneself.**

[Question] What though, can and often does happen, when we allow a matter to run its course?

- 2· With that his master, provoked to wrath, delivered him to the jailers, until he should pay back all that was owing. (Matthew 18:34)**

[Question] How did the master of the steward deal with his slave, when he failed to show mercy to others?

- 3· I tell you, you will certainly not get out from there until you pay over the last small coin of very little value. (Luke 12:59)**

[Question] If an adverse judgment was lodged against one for not making amends, then how much worse would it be for them?

Matthew 5:27· You heard that it was said, you must not commit adultery.

1• Jesus now takes another matter of the Law Covenant, that of adultery. The Law Covenant forbids committing adultery, and it gives a penalty of death for anyone doing so.

[Question] How did the Law Covenant deal with adultery, or marital unfaithfulness?

2• You must not commit adultery. (Exodus 20:14)

[Question] What was one of the Ten Commandments?

3• Neither must you commit adultery. (Deuteronomy 5:18)

[Question] What were the Israelites forbidden to do?

4• You know the commandments. Do not commit adultery. Do not murder. Do not steal. Do not bear false witness. Honor your father and mother. (Luke 18:20)

[Question] How did Jesus uphold this, as still binding upon Christians?

5• For the Law code, you must not commit adultery, you must not murder, you must not steal, you must not covet, and whatever other commandment there is, is summed up in this word, namely, you must love your neighbor as yourself. (Romans 13:9)

[Question] What is the overall gist of all the commandments of the Law Covenant?

6• And you must not give your emission as semen to the wife of your associate to become unclean by it. (Leviticus 18:20)

[Question] What would giving an emission of semen to another man's wife make both the man and the woman?

Matthew 5:28• But I say to you, that everyone that keeps on looking at a woman so as to have a passion for her, has already committed adultery with her in his heart.

1• Jesus now shows, that everyone who looks at a woman so as to develop a passion for her, has already committed adultery with her in his heart. He merely lacks the opportunity.

[Question] How then, did Jesus go beyond what the Law Covenant demanded, in the way of conduct?

2• The Law Covenant did not address such things, but Christianity goes further and deeper, than merely addressing our actions. It addresses our hearts, the source of our motivations, for the spirit of Yehowah God searches our hearts, and they must

be clean and holy in his sight, for such intimate closeness with him.

[Question] How then, does Christianity go further than the Law Covenant, and what does it deal with, that goes even deeper?

[Question] Under Christianity, what must be the condition of a man's heart?

3• Neither must you desire your fellowman's wife. Neither must you selfishly crave your fellowman's house, his field or his slave man or his slave girl, his bull or his ass, or anything that belongs to your fellowman. (Deuteronomy 5:21)

[Question] What did the Law Covenant point to, that is certainly still true under Christianity, and that Jesus expanded upon above?

4• And it came about at the time of evening that David proceeded to rise from his bed, and walk about on the rooftop of the king's house, and from the rooftop he caught sight of a woman bathing herself, and the woman was very good in appearance. (2 Samuel 11:2)

[Question] How did even faithful King David entrap himself, with the desire of his eyes?

5• A covenant I have concluded with my eyes. So how could I show myself attentive to a virgin? (Job 31:1)

[Question] What covenant did Job enter into with his eyes?

6• They have eyes full of adultery and unable to desist from sin, and they entice unsteady souls. They have a heart trained in covetousness. They are accursed children. (2 Peter 2:14)

[Question] What are wicked men always trying to get from others?

7• Because everything in the world, the desire of the flesh and the desire of the eyes and the showy display of one's means of life, does not originate with the Father, but originates with the world. (1 John 2:16)

[Question] Where does this desire of the eyes stem from?

8• For from inside, out of the heart of men, injurious reasonings issue forth, fornications, thieveries, murders. (Mark 7:21)

[Question] From where do wicked reasonings issue forth from, and what are some of these wicked reasonings?

9• All these wicked things issue forth from within and defile a man. (Mark 7:23)

[Question] From where do such would reasonings issue forth, and what do they do to a man wanting to serve God?

- 10· Now after these things it came about that the wife of his master began to raise her eyes toward Joseph and say; Lie down with me. (Genesis 39:7)**

[Question] How did Potiphar's wife allow her desire to rule over her?

[Question] How did Joseph not allow the same thing to happen to him?

- 11· You must not commit adultery. (Exodus 20:14)**

[Question] What was expressly forbidden, on penalty of death, under the Law Covenant?

- 12· You must not desire your fellowman's house. You must not desire your fellowman's wife, nor his slave man nor his slave girl nor his bull nor his ass, nor anything that belongs to your fellowman. (Exodus 20:17)**

[Question] How did even the Law Covenant forbid covetousness, which is not necessarily an action, but which often leads to wrong actions?

- 13· And it came about after such things that Absalom the son of David had a beautiful sister whose name was Tamar, and Amnon, the son of David, fell in love with her. (2 Samuel 13:1)**

[Question] How did Amnon allow his wrong desires to lead him to sin, which eventually cost him his own life?

- 14· And my harp came to be merely for mourning, and my pipe for the voice of weeping ones. (Job 30:31)**

[Question] How did Job feel about the losses he had suffered?

- 15· If my heart has been enticed toward a woman, and I kept lying in wait at the very entranceway of my companion. (Job 31:9)**

[Question] What did Job show would be wrong conduct?

- 16· Those who have schemed bad things in their heart, who all day long keep attacking as in wars. (Psalms 140:2)**

[Question] Whom did the Psalmist condemn?

- 17· Do not desire her prettiness in your heart, and may she not take you with her lustrous eyes. (Proverbs 6:25)**

[Question] What did the congregator warn his offspring to avoid?

- 18· I have said, I shall go up on the palm tree, that I may take**

hold of its fruit stalks of dates. And, please, may your breasts become like clusters of the vine, and the fragrance of your nose like apples. (**Song of Solomon 7:8**)

[Question] How did the Song of Solomon express a man's desire for his mate?

- 19· And she began to lust after them at the sight of her eyes and proceeded to send messengers to them in Chaldea. (**Ezekiel 23:16**)

[Question] How did the entire nation of Israel lust after the Chaldeans?

- 20· But if your eye is wicked, your whole body will be dark. If, in reality, the light that is in you is darkness, how great that darkness is! (**Matthew 6:23**)

[Question] If we have a wicked way of looking at life, how will this affect our bodies?

[Question] If the best of life we enjoy is only darkness, then what must we say about this darkness?

- 21· For the Law code, you must not commit adultery, you must not murder, you must not steal, you must not covet, and whatever other commandment there is, is summed up in this word, namely, you must love your neighbor as yourself. (**Romans 13:9**)

[Question] How can all the laws within the Law Covenant be summed up?

- 22· Let marriage be honorable among all, and the marriage bed be without defilement, for God will judge fornicators and adulterers. (**Hebrews 13:4**)

[Question] How should marriage be among all anointed Christians, for who will judge those who fail to keep it so?

Matthew 5:29· If, now, that right eye of yours is making you stumble, tear it out and throw it away from you. For it is more beneficial to you, for one of your members to be lost to you, than for your whole body to be pitched into Gehenna.

1· Jesus now shows, that any body member that cannot stay clean, we would be better off without. If a member of the body, like the eye, is causing us to stumble, and will cause the loss of our entire life eternally, then we would be far better off blind, and yet alive.

[Question] How did Jesus feel about anybody member we could not keep clean from serious wrong conduct?

[Question] Why then, did he show, that we would be better off without it?

2• Jesus was not here making a direct statement of just what we should do to correct the situation, rather he was showing how seriously we should address the problem, sparing no effort to gain the victory over it, so as to get life eternal.

[Question] What Jesus actually saying that we should cut the member off, or what would we certainly do before doing that?

3• The counsel also has a secondary application to Christ's own spiritual body, the congregation, showing that any member of the body who would invite uncleanness into the body, should be cut off from the body to protect the remainder of the body's members.

[Question] How should we apply this understanding to Christ's own spiritual body, the congregation?

4• If, then, your hand or your foot is making you stumble, cut it off and throw it away from you. It is finer for you to enter into life maimed or lame, than to be thrown with two hands or two feet into the everlasting fire. (Matthew 18:8)

[Question] Why did Jesus recommend cutting off a limb, for what would be a better outcome?

5• The lamp of the body is your eye. When your eye is simple, your whole body is also bright. But when it is wicked, your body is also dark. (Luke 11:34)

[Question] What is the lamp of the body, and what will brighten our entire outlook on life?

6• Also, if your eye is making you stumble, tear it out and throw it away from you. It is finer for you to enter one-eyed into life than to be thrown with two eyes into the fiery Gehenna. (Matthew 18:9)

[Question] What would be a better outcome than to end up in Gehenna?

7• And if your eye makes you stumble, throw it away. It is finer for you to enter one-eyed into the kingdom of God, than with two eyes to be pitched into Gehenna. (Mark 9:47)

[Question] How should we treat a body member, that is making the whole body stumble?

- 8• If my stepping deviates from the way, or my heart has walked merely after my eyes, or any defect has stuck in my own palms. (**Job 31:7**)

[Question] What did faithful Job consider would be a matter for the justices to deal with, if he did so?

- 9• While God judges those outside? Remove the wicked man from among yourselves. (**1 Corinthians 5:13**)

[Question] Who is responsible for judging those within the Christian congregation?

Matthew 5:30•• Also, if your right hand is making you stumble, cut it off and throw it away from you. For it is more beneficial to you for one of your members to be lost, than for your whole body to land in Gehenna.

- 1• Jesus now extends the illustration further, showing that whatever body member is making you stumble, should be cut off and removed from the body, and that then, the body will survive. This emphasizes just how hard we should work to keep from stumbling, for cutting off a body member is certainly a last resort.

[Question] How does Jesus now extend the illustration, and what does this emphasize for Christians?

- 2• Deaden, therefore, your body members that are upon the earth as respects fornication, uncleanness, sexual appetite, hurtful desire, and covetousness, which is idolatry. (**Colossians 3:5**)

[Question] What should anointed Christians deaden their body members to upon the earth?

- 3• And if ever your hand makes you stumble, cut it off. It is finer for you to enter into life maimed, than with two hands to go off into Gehenna, into the fire that cannot be put out. (**Mark 9:43**)

[Question] What would be a finer outcome for an anointed Christian, than to end up in Gehenna?

- 4• And all the crowd were seeking to touch him, because power was going out of him and healing them all. (**Luke 6:19**)

[Question] Why did people come to touch Jesus, for what were they seeking from him?

Matthew 5:31· **Moreover it was said; Whoever divorces his wife, let him give her a certificate of divorce.**

1· Jesus now shows that under the Law of Moses, if a man was to divorce his wife, he should give her a certificate of divorce, thus showing in writing, that the relationship was over.

[Question] What was a man to give to a wife upon leaving her, under the Law Covenant, and what did it demonstrate?

2· And Pharisees came up to him, intent on tempting him and saying; Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife on every sort of ground? (Matthew 19:3)

[Question] What did the Pharisees try to tempt Jesus to say?

3· Pharisees now approached and, to put him to the test, began questioning him whether it was lawful for a man to divorce a wife. (Mark 10:2)

[Question] What question did the Pharisees put to Jesus, to tempt him on the subject of divorce?

4· In case a man takes a woman and does make her his possession as a wife, it must also occur, that if she should find no favor in his eyes, because he has found something indecent on her part, he must also write out a certificate of divorce for her, and put it in her hand, and dismiss her from his house. (Deuteronomy 24:1)

[Question] What was a man to do under the Law Covenant, if he found something indecent within his wife?

5· He said to them; Moses, out of regard for your hardheartedness, made the concession to you of divorcing your wives, but such has not been the case from the beginning. (Matthew 19:8)

[Question] What did Jesus show, that what Moses had allowed under the Law Covenant, really was from his hand?

[Question] Was divorce allowed for men from the time of Adam and Eve?

6· They said; Moses allowed the writing of a certificate of dismissal and divorcing her. (Mark 10:4)

[Question] What concession did Moses make for the Israelites concerning divorce?

7· They said to him; Why, then, did Moses prescribe giving a certificate of dismissal and divorcing her? (Matthew 19:7)

[Question] What then, did the Pharisees ask of Jesus, in response to his answer?

Matthew 5:32· **However, I say to you, that everyone divorcing his wife, except on account of fornication,¹ makes her a subject for adultery, and whoever marries a divorced² woman commits adultery.³**

Footnote: Fornication Greek, *por-nei'as*; Latin, *for-ni-ca-ti-o'nis*; J17, 18, 22(Hebrew), *zenuth'* See Appendix 5A

Footnote: Or, loosed off

Footnote: Or, commits marital sexual unfaithfulness Greek, *moi-kha'tai*; Latin, *a-dul'te-rat*; J22(Hebrew), *noh-'eph'* See (Ezekiel 16:32) Footnote

1· Jesus clarified the situation of divorce, by showing that there was only one approved grounds for divorcing a woman, where the innocent party was free to remarry, and that was where fornication had occurred. Anyone divorcing his wife on other grounds made her a subject for adultery, for any other man having relations with her would be committing adultery. Therefore whoever marries a divorced woman, where fornication did not break her marriage bond, is committing adultery.

[Question] What did Jesus then show, was the only true grounds for divorcing, and then which party was free to remarry?

[Question] If this was not the case, then what would anyone having relations with the woman be doing?

2· And your sons will become shepherds in the wilderness forty years, and they will have to answer for your acts of fornication, until your carcasses come to their end in the wilderness. (Numbers 14:33)

[Question] What kind of fornication did the Israelites practice in the wilderness, and against whom?

3· And his concubine began to commit fornication against him. Finally she went away from him to the house of her father at Bethlehem in Judah and continued there fully four months. (Judges 19:2)

[Question] What fornication started a series of worse events within Israel, and within the tribe of Benjamin?

4· When her sister Oholibah got to see it, then she exercised her sensual desire more ruinously than she, and her prostitution more than the fornication of her sister. (Ezekiel 23:11)

[Question] How did the nation of Judah imitate the fornications of her sister nation of Israel?

- 5• **For their mother has committed fornication. She that was pregnant with them has acted shamefully, for she has said, I want to go after those passionately loving me, those giving my bread and my water, my wool and my linen, my oil and my drink. (Hosea 2:5)**

[Question] How did Yehowah God illustrate, through his prophet Hosea, the unfaithfulness of his covenant people?

- 6• **For from inside, out of the heart of men, injurious reasonings issue forth, fornications, thieveries, murders. (Mark 7:21)**

[Question] What kinds of wicked reasonings issue forth out of the hearts of men?

- 7• **In answer Peter and the other apostles said; We must obey God as ruler rather than men. (Acts of Apostles 5:29)**

[Question] Whom did Peter and John obey God, regardless of the consequences?

- 8• **And he said to them; Whoever divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery against her. (Mark 10:11)**

[Question] What does one commit who divorces his wife and marries another without grounds for divorce?

- 9• **Everyone that divorces his wife and marries another, commits adultery, and he that marries a woman divorced from a husband commits adultery. (Luke 16:18)**

[Question] What does one commit, who divorces and then remarries without grounds for divorce in the first marriage?

- 10• **So, then, while her husband is living, she would be styled an adulteress if she became another man's. But if her husband dies, she is free from his law, so that she is not an adulteress if she becomes another man's. (Romans 7:3)**

[Question] What would a woman be styled, if she became another's while still married?

[Question] When only is a woman free to remarry, and be free of her husband's law?

- 11• **I say to you that whoever divorces his wife, except on the ground of fornication, and marries another commits adultery. (Matthew 19:9)**

[Question] What does anyone remarrying without scriptural grounds doing?

- 12• And she must go out of his house and go and become another man's. (**Deuteronomy 24:2**)

[Question] When a man gives his wife a divorce certificate, what is she then free to do under the Law of Moses?

- 13• For he has hated a divorcing, Yehowah the God of Israel has said, and the one who with violence has covered over his garment, Yehowah of armies has said. And you must guard yourselves respecting your spirit, and you must not deal treacherously. (**Malachi 2:16**)

[Question] How does Yehowah God feel about divorcing?

- 14• To the married people I give instructions, yet not I but the Lord, that a wife should not depart from her husband. (**1 Corinthians 7:10**)

[Question] What counsel did Paul give to married women in the Christian congregation?

Matthew 5:33•• Again you heard that it was said to those of ancient times: You must not swear without performing, but you must pay your vows to Yehowah.¹

Footnote: See Appendix 1D

- 1• Part of the Law Covenant, was that a man must keep his word, and that anything to which he swore to, was a vow that he must pay. There was no release from this keeping of vows of any kind.

[Question] What must a man keep always under the Law Covenant?

[Question] How then, did this principle relate to vows?

- 2• And you must not swear in my name to a lie, so that you do profane the name of your God. I am Yehowah. (**Leviticus 19:12**)

[Question] What was a man never to swear to?

- 3• In case a man makes a vow to Yehowah or swears an oath to bind a vow of abstinence upon his soul, he must not violate his word. According to all that has gone out of his mouth he should do. (**Numbers 30:2**)

[Question] How did Yehowah God feel about a man taking an oath before him, and then not keeping it?

- 4• In case you vow a vow to Yehowah your God, you must not be slow about paying it, because Yehowah your God will without fail require it of you, and it would indeed become a sin on your part. (**Deuteronomy 23:21**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God require of any man making a vow to him?

- 5• Offer thanksgiving as your sacrifice to God, and pay to the Most High your vows. (**Psalms 50:14**)

[Question] What is a sacrifice that Yehowah God is always well pleased with?

- 6• Whenever you vow a vow to God, do not hesitate to pay it, for there is no delight in the stupid ones. What you vow, pay. (**Ecclesiastes 5:4**)

[Question] How should we feel about any vow that we might make to Yehowah God, and how would he view anyone failing to keep a vow?

- 7• At this he said; Is that not why his name is called Jacob, in that he should supplant me these two times? My birthright he has already taken, and here at this time he has taken my blessing! Then he added; Have you not reserved a blessing for me? (**Genesis 27:36**)

[Question] When Isaac gave the blessing to Jacob, what could he then not take back?

- 8• My father made me swear, saying; Look! I am dying. In my burial place which I have excavated for myself in the land of Canaan is where you are to bury me. And now, please, let me go up and bury my father, after which I am willing to return. (**Genesis 50:5**)

[Question] What did Jacob demand of Joseph, by making him swear to, that he would do for him after his death?

- 9• Or in case a soul swears to the extent of speaking thoughtlessly with his lips to do evil or to do good, as respects anything at all that the man might speak thoughtlessly in a sworn statement, although it had been hidden from him, and yet he himself has come to know it, then he has become guilty as respects one of these things. (**Leviticus 5:4**)

[Question] Was a man who spoke thoughtlessly, to be held to what he said, once it was made known to him?

[Question] Thus what should our every Yes, and No, really mean?

- 10^{••} The utterance of your lips you should keep, and you must do just as you have vowed to Yehowah your God as a voluntary offering that you spoke of with your mouth. (Deuteronomy 23:23)**

[Question] What word must we always keep?

- 11[•] At that the men said to her; Our souls are to die instead of you people! If you will not tell about this matter of ours, it must also occur, that when Yehowah gives us the land, we also shall certainly exercise loving-kindness and trustworthiness toward you. (Joshua 2:14)**

[Question] How did the Israelites keep their word to Rahab to preserve her and her family alive?

- 12[•] And the sons of Israel did not strike them, because the chieftains of the assembly had sworn to them by Yehowah the God of Israel. And all the assembly began to murmur against the chieftains. (Joshua 9:18)**

[Question] Why did the older men of Israel keep their covenant to the Canaanite men of Gibeon, even after finding out, that they had lied to preserve their own lives?

- 13[•] And it came about that when he caught sight of her, he began to rip his garments and to say; Alas, my daughter! You have indeed made me bend down, and you yourself have become the one I was ostracizing. And I, I have opened my mouth to Yehowah, and I am unable to turn back. (Judges 11:35)**

[Question] How did Jephthah feel upon realizing what his word before God would require of him and of his daughter?

- 14[•] As for us, we are not allowed to give them wives from our daughters, because the sons of Israel have sworn, saying, Cursed is the one that gives a wife to Benjamin. (Judges 21:18)**

[Question] What prevented Israel from giving their daughters in marriage to the tribe of Benjamin?

- 15[•] And the king proceeded to swear and say; As Yehowah is living who redeemed my soul out of all distress. (1 Kings 1:29)**

[Question] Who did King David swear would sit upon his throne when he died?

- 16[•] So they swore to Yehowah with a loud voice and with joyful**

shouting, and with the trumpets and with horns. (2 Chronicles 15:14)

[Question] What did the men swear to, during the reign of Asa?

- 17• In his eyes anyone contemptible is certainly rejected, but those fearing Yehowah he honors. He has sworn to what is bad for himself, and yet he does not alter. (Psalms 15:4)**

[Question] What is the correct course for anyone who swears to something, even if it proves to be hard upon him?

- 18• My vows I shall pay to Yehowah, yes, in front of all his people. (Psalms 116:14)**

[Question] What did the Psalmist state, that he would certainly pay before Yehowah God?

- 19• I have made a sworn statement, and I will carry it out, to keep your righteous judicial decisions. (Psalms 119:106)**

[Question] What vow did the Psalmist take to do God's will?

[Question] Is Christian dedication, just such a vow?

- 20• It is a snare when earthling man has rashly cried out, Holy! And after vows he is disposed to make examination. (Proverbs 20:25)**

[Question] What proves to be a snare for men who speak rashly?

- 21• Therefore this is what the Sovereign Lord Yehowah has said; As I am alive, surely my oath that he has despised and my covenant that he has broken, I will even bring it upon his head. (Ezekiel 17:19)**

Matthew 5:34• However, I say to you; Do not swear at all, neither by heaven, because it is God's throne.

- 1• Jesus now shows, that it is better not to swear to anything at all. The Jews customarily swore by heaven, there being nothing higher that they could swear by, but as Jesus showed this is God's throne. They are mere mortal men and not gods.**

[Question] What course did Jesus advise as better than ever swearing by anything?

- 2• Above all things, though, my brothers, stop swearing, yes, either by heaven or by earth or by any other oath. But let your Yes mean Yes, and your No, No, so that you do not fall under judgment. (James 5:12)**

[Question] What counsel did Jesus give about swearing at all?

[Question] What then, should all the words coming forth from our mouths mean?

- 3• The heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool. What sort of house will you build for me? Yehowah says. Or what is the place for my resting? (**Acts of Apostles 7:49**)

[Question] What is the entire earth to Yehowah God?

- 4• Woe to you, blind guides, who say; If anyone swears by the temple, it is nothing, but if anyone swears by the gold of the temple, he is under obligation. (**Matthew 23:16**)

[Question] What did Jesus call the Jewish religious leaders, and why?

- 5• And he that swears by heaven is swearing by the throne of God and by him that is sitting on it. (**Matthew 23:22**)

[Question] What is anyone swearing by heaven swearing by?

Matthew 5:35•• Nor by earth, because it is the footstool of his feet, nor by Jerusalem, because it is the city of the great King.

- 1• Likewise Jesus counseled them not to swear by earth, because it is God's footstool, his glory, not by Jerusalem, because it is his name city. Swearing by such things would somehow infer, that God was involved in their word, and would help to keep it, whereas it was just the word of men.

[Question] Why should men not swear by earth, nor by Jerusalem?

[Question] What would such swearing infer, which is not true?

- 2• This is what Yehowah has said; The heavens are my throne, and the earth is my footstool. Where, then, is the house that you people can build for me, and where, then, is the place as a resting-place for me? (**Isaiah 66:1**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God call the entire earth?

- 3• O how Yehowah in his anger beclouds the daughter of Zion! He has thrown down from heaven to earth, the beauty of Israel. And he has not remembered his footstool in the day of his anger. (**Lamentations 2:1**)

[Question] How did Jeremiah lament Yehowah God's treatment of his footstool?

- 4• Pretty for loftiness, the exultation of the whole earth, is Mount Zion on the remote sides of the north, the town of

the grand King. (Psalms 48:2)

[Question] How was the grand town of Jerusalem described by the Psalmist?

Matthew 5:36· **Nor by your head must you swear, because you cannot turn one hair white or black.**

1· Even for a man to swear by his own head was wrong, because a man does not even control his own self, for he cannot even turn one of his hairs white or black.

[Question] Why would it be wrong for a man to even swear by his own head?

Matthew 5:37· **Just let your word Yes mean Yes, your No, No. What is in excess of these is from the wicked one.¹**

Footnote: Or, from what is wicked

1· Jesus now gives his counsel regarding swearing, just say what you mean, and follow through in doing it faithfully. He then shows that anything we might say in excess of this, is from Satan the Devil.

[Question] To sum up then, how did Jesus counsel men to speak?

[Question] Where then, does anything in excess of this come from?

2· Well, when I had such an intention, I did not indulge in any lightness, did I? Or, what things I purpose, do I purpose them according to the flesh, that with me there should be, Yes, Yes and, No, No? (2 Corinthians 1:17)

[Question] How did the apostles Paul always try to speak?

3· Above all things, though, my brothers, stop swearing, yes, either by heaven or by earth, or by any other oath. But let your Yes mean Yes, and your No, No, so that you do not fall under judgment. (James 5:12)

[Question] What did James encourage his Christian brothers not to do?

[Question] What then, should our words mean every time we speak anything?

4· You are from your father the Devil, and you wish to do the desires of your father. That one was a manslayer when he began, and he did not stand fast in the truth, because truth is not in him. When he speaks the lie, he speaks according to his own disposition, because he is a liar and

the father of the lie. (John 8:44)

[Question] Who are men who speak otherwise, emanating forth from, and why?

- 5· So it followed in the morning that here it was Leah! Consequently he said to Laban; What is this you have done to me? Was it not for Rachel that I served with you? So why have you tricked me? (Genesis 29:25)**

[Question] How did Laban lie to Jacob?

- 6· And you must not swear in my name to a lie, so that you do profane the name of your God. I am Yehowah. (Leviticus 19:12)**

[Question] Whose name would it profane, to speak a lie, and then swear to it?

- 7· No, my sons, because the report is not good that I am hearing, that the people of Yehowah are causing to circulate. (1 Samuel 2:24)**

[Question] How did Eli hear a bad report about his wayward sons and their behavior as priests?

- 8· As vaporous clouds and a wind without any downpour, is a man boasting himself about a gift in falsehood. (Proverbs 25:14)**

[Question] How is a man who boasts like clouds without rain?

- 9· Then you turn back and profane my name and bring back each one his manservant and each one his maidservant, whom you let go free agreeably to their soul, and you subject them to become your menservants and maidservants. (Jeremiah 34:16)**

[Question] What did the leaders of Judah do, going against their earlier word during the time of Jeremiah?

- 10· And he has despised an oath in breaking a covenant, and, look! He had given his hand and has done even all these things. He will not make his escape. (Ezekiel 17:18)**

[Question] How did Yehowah God feel about the false oath that Zedekiah made before Nebuchadnezzar?

- 11· But he commenced to curse and swear; I do not know this man of whom you speak. (Mark 14:71)**

[Question] What did Peter do out of the fear of men?

Matthew 5:38· **You heard that it was said: Eye for eye and tooth for tooth.**

1· Under the Law Covenant the basic principle was stated of repaying an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth, if one was wronged by another. This is called equivalence, and it is a basic principle of all Law, even of many human laws. Let the punishment fit the crime.

[Question] What basic principle of justice was echoed throughout the Law Covenant?

[Question] How do many today express that same principle?

2· Eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot. (Exodus 21:24)

[Question] What did the Law Covenant demand of the one causing injury to another?

3· Fracture for fracture, eye for eye, tooth for tooth. The same sort of defect he may cause in the man, that is what should be caused in him. (Leviticus 24:20)

[Question] What then, should be done to any man who permanently injured another?

4· And your eye should not feel sorry. Soul will be for soul, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot. (Deuteronomy 19:21)

[Question] What were the Israelites told not to feel for such a person who caused the damage to another?

5· Do not say; I will pay back evil! Hope in Yehowah, and he will save you. (Proverbs 20:22)

[Question] What should we never seek to repay to another ourselves?

Matthew 5:39· **However, I say to you; Do not resist him that is wicked,¹ but whoever slaps you on your right cheek, turn the other also to him.**

Footnote: Or, what is wicked

1· Jesus now goes further by stating, that a man who is wronged or treated badly by a wicked one, should not seek any kind of equivalence through retribution or vengeance, rather if a man slaps him, then he should turn the other cheek to him, to let him slap it also.

[Question] What does Jesus now go further in saying we should do, if slapped?

- 2• **Do not say; Just as he did to me, so I am going to do to him. I shall repay to each one according to his acting. (Proverbs 24:29)**

[Question] What should we ourselves never try to repay to another?

- 3• **My back I gave to the strikers, and my cheeks to those plucking off the hair. My face I did not conceal from humiliating things and spit. (Isaiah 50:6)**

[Question] What was prophesied about the course of Jesus Christ when before his persecutors?

- 4• **Let him give his cheek to the very one striking him. Let him have his sufficiency of reproach. (Lamentations 3:30)**

[Question] What did Lamentations say about the course of the Christ?

- 5• **To him that strikes you on the one cheek, offer the other also, and from him that takes away your outer garment, do not withhold even the undergarment. (Luke 6:29)**

[Question] What counsel did Jesus give to those who might have to stand up to provocation, or unreasonable demands?

- 6• **After he said these things, one of the officers that was standing by gave Jesus a slap in the face and said; Is that the way you answer the chief priest? (John 18:22)**

[Question] How did Jesus demonstrate this principle by his own actions on the night of his own arrest?

- 7• **Return evil for evil to no one. Provide fine things in the sight of all men. (Romans 12:17)**

[Question] What should Christians always return to others?

- 8• **When he was being reviled, he did not go reviling in return. When he was suffering, he did not go threatening, but kept on committing himself to the one who judges righteously. (1 Peter 2:23)**

[Question] How did Jesus behave when being reviled or when suffering?

[Question] Who did Jesus then turn to, to effect judgment for him?

- 9• **What able-bodied man is like Job, who drinks up derision like water? (Job 34:7)**

[Question] What was said of the faithful man Job?

- 10· The wicked one has desired the netted prey of bad men, but as for the root of the righteous ones, it yields. (Proverbs 12:12)**

[Question] How does the righteous one react to thrusts against him?

- 11· The beginning of contention is as one letting out waters, so before the quarrel has burst forth, take your leave. (Proverbs 17:14)**

[Question] What is the beginning of contention like, and so what is the wise course when fighting begins?

- 12· Do not avenge yourselves, beloved, but yield place to the wrath, for it is written: Vengeance is mine! I will repay, says Yehowah. (Romans 12:19)**

[Question] Should anointed Christians ever take vengeance for any wrong?

[Question] Who promises to take vengeance for them, and to judge?

- 13· Really, then, it means altogether a defeat for you that you are having lawsuits with one another. Why do you not rather let yourselves be wronged? Why do you not rather let yourselves be defrauded? (1 Corinthians 6:7)**

[Question] What would the presence of lawsuits among brothers denote for them?

[Question] What would be a finer course, when one is wronged by another Christian?

- 14· Does not behave indecently, does not look for its own interests, does not become provoked. It does not keep account of the injury. (1 Corinthians 13:5)**

[Question] What things does love not do?

- 15· See that no one renders injury for injury to anyone else, but always pursue what is good toward one another and to all others. (1 Thessalonians 5:15)**

[Question] Should any Christians ever hurt another Christian?

[Question] What then, does this counsel rule out completely regarding war?

- 16· But a slave of the Lord does not need to fight, but needs to be gentle toward all, qualified to teach, keeping himself restrained under evil. (2 Timothy 2:24)**

[Question] What does a slave of the Lord not need to do?

[Question] How should such a one act, when under evil circumstances?

Matthew 5:40 **And if a person wants to go to court with you and get possession of your inner garment, let your outer garment also go to him.**

1• Jesus now returns to his earlier argument of going to court against another, and shows, that if a man is taking us to court to obtain an inner garment, because he feels it is owed to him, then we should let the outer garment go to him also.

[Question] How should a Christian act, if someone takes him to court to get his outer garment?

2• To him that strikes you on the one cheek, offer the other also, and from him that takes away your outer garment, do not withhold even the undergarment. (Luke 6:29)

[Question] How should a Christian react when provoked intentionally?

3• Really, then, it means altogether a defeat for you, that you are having lawsuits with one another. Why do you not rather let yourselves be wronged? Why do you not rather let yourselves be defrauded? (1 Corinthians 6:7)

[Question] What does the presence of lawsuits among Christian brothers, denote for them?

[Question] What would be a finer course for the one who was wronged to take?

4• At this Mephibosheth said to the king; Let him even take the whole, now that my lord the king has come in peace to his house. (2 Samuel 19:30)

[Question] How did Mephibosheth settle amicably an argument over a field with Ziba?

5• At that Peter rose and went with them. And when he arrived, they led him up into the upper chamber, and all the widows presented themselves to him weeping and exhibiting many inner garments and outer garments, that Dorcas used to make while she was with them. (Acts of Apostles 9:39)

[Question] How did many feel when Dorcas died suddenly, and why?

Matthew 5:41 **And if someone under authority impresses you into service for a mile, go with him two miles.¹**

Footnote: Mile Greek, *mi'li-on*; Latin, *mil'le* A Roman mile of 1,479.5 meters (4,854 English feet) Compare (Luke 24:13) Footnote see Appendix 8A

1• Jesus then carries this into other areas, where someone under authority might impress a Christian into his service, the Christian should willingly go beyond what was requested of him, and go even double what was asked.

[Question] How should a Christian react if pressed into service by governmental authorities?

2• Also, they impressed into service a passerby, a certain Simon of Cyrene, coming from the country, the father of Alexander and Rufus, that he should lift up his torture stake. (Mark 15:21)

[Question] How was this principle demonstrated by Simon of Cyrene on the day of Jesus' death?

3• The wicked one has desired the netted prey of bad men, but as for the root of the righteous ones, it yields. (Proverbs 12:12)

[Question] What does the righteous one do, when pressed?

Matthew 5:42• Give to the one asking you, and do not turn away from one that wants to borrow from you without interest.

1• Jesus now expands his counsel to other areas, showing that when people come to us asking for things they need, we should freely give to them. Also if anyone wants to borrow from us without interest, then we should freely do so.

[Question] How should a Christian react to someone in need, or to someone who wants to borrow without interest?

2• Do not take interest and usury from him, but you must be in fear of your God, and your brother must keep alive with you. (Leviticus 25:36)

[Question] What were the Israelites forbidden to do toward a fellow Jew under the Law Covenant?

3• You must not make your brother pay interest, interest on money, interest on food, interest on anything on which one may claim interest. (Deuteronomy 23:19)

[Question] What things, was a Jew not to charge a fellow Jew interest on?

4• For you should generously open your hand to him and by all means lend him on pledge as much as he needs, which he is in want of. (Deuteronomy 15:8)

[Question] How should Jews treat fellow Jews, even those that might be in need of help?

- 5• **For someone poor will never cease to be in the midst of the land. That is why I am commanding you, saying, you should generously open up your hand to your afflicted and poor brother in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11)**

[Question] Who will always be within the land?

[Question] What command did Yehowah God give to help the needy in the land?

- 6• **Give to everyone asking you, and from the one taking your things away do not ask them back. (Luke 6:30)**

[Question] Whom did Jesus state, that Christians should give to?

[Question] When a Christian lends should he even expect to get back what he originally gave?

- 7• **Also, if you lend without interest to those from whom you hope to receive, of what credit is it to you? Even sinners lend without interest to sinners that they may get back as much. (Luke 6:34)**

[Question] Is there any credit with God to lend only to people you expect to repay you, give reasons?

Matthew 5:43•• You heard that it was said; You must love your neighbor and hate your enemy.

- 1• **Under the Law Covenant counsel was given to love one's neighbor, and also to hate ones enemies.**

[Question] What did the Law Covenant counsel men to do toward friends and enemies?

- 2• **You must not take vengeance nor have a grudge against the sons of your people, and you must love your fellow as yourself. I am Yehowah. (Leviticus 19:18)**

[Question] What were Israelites not to hold against one another, for how were they to treat their fellowman?

- 3• **The second is this, you must love your neighbor as yourself. There is no other commandment greater than these. (Mark 12:31)**

[Question] What was the second greatest commandment in the Law Covenant?

- 4• **Should you come upon your enemy's bull or his ass going**

astray, you are to return it without fail to him. (Exodus 23:4)

[Question] What were Israelites to do under the Law Covenant, if they saw their enemy's ass or bull going astray?

Matthew 5:44 **However, I say to you; Continue to love your enemies and to pray for those persecuting you.**

1• Yet Jesus counseled his disciples to continue to love their enemies and to pray for them, even for those who are actively persecuting them. This shows what is really in our hearts, and if we really want the best for others in life.

[Question] How did Jesus counsel differ, for how should they treat their enemies?

[Question] Could true anointed Christians ever justify war under the counsel above?

[Question] What should true Christians want in their hearts for all other men?

2• If the one hating you is hungry, give him bread to eat, and if he is thirsty, give him water to drink. (Proverbs 25:21)

[Question] How did the Proverb say, that we should treat one who hates us?

3• But, if your enemy is hungry, feed him. If he is thirsty, give him something to drink. By doing this you will heap fiery coals upon his head. (Romans 12:20)

[Question] How did Paul reiterate this fine counsel in his letter the Romans?

4• To bless those cursing you, to pray for those who are insulting you. (Luke 6:28)

[Question] How did Jesus counsel men to act toward those cursing them or insulting them?

5• But Jesus was saying; Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing. Furthermore, to distribute his garments, they cast lots. (Luke 23:34)

[Question] How did Jesus Christ himself apply this counsel, even when nailed to a torture stake by wicked men?

6• Then, bending his knees, he cried out with a strong voice; Yehowah, do not charge this sin against them. And after saying this he fell asleep in death. (Acts of Apostles 7:60)

[Question] What did the disciple Stephen also request of Yehowah God to do, toward those who killed him unlawfully?

- 7• Keep on blessing those who persecute. Be blessing and do not be cursing. (Romans 12:14)**

[Question] How did the apostle Paul give similar counsel to the Romans?

- 8• Accordingly David dispersed his men with these words, and he did not allow them to rise up against Saul. As for Saul, he rose up from the cave and kept going on his way. (1 Samuel 24:7)**

[Question] What did David not allow his men to do, though they had the opportunity, and Saul was worthy of this wrath?

- 9• Now in the case where a man finds his enemy, will he send him away on a good road? So, Yehowah himself will reward you with good, due to the fact that this day you have done it to me. (1 Samuel 24:19)**

[Question] For what actions would Yehowah God reward a man with good?

- 10• But he said; You must not strike them down. Are those whom you have taken captive with your sword and with your bow, the ones that you are striking down? Set bread and water before them, that they may eat and drink and go to their lord. (2 Kings 6:22)**

[Question] What did Elisha counsel the king of Israel to do to captives taken prisoner?

- 11• And I did not allow my palate to sin by asking for an oath against his soul. (Job 31:30)**

[Question] How did righteous Job refuse to act toward an enemy who was hating him?

- 12• Should the righteous one strike me, it would be a loving-kindness, and should he reprove me, it would be oil upon the head, which my head would not want to refuse. For still there would be even my prayer during their calamities. (Psalms 141:5)**

[Question] How did the Psalmist feel about being counseled by a righteous one?

- 13• And he will certainly render judgment among the nations and set matters straight respecting many peoples. And they will have to beat their swords into plowshares and**

their spears into pruning shears. Nation will not lift up sword against nation, neither will they learn war anymore. (Isaiah 2:4)

[Question] What does Yehowah God promise to render among the nations?

[Question] What then, will people do with their weapons of warfare, and will they ever practice war again?

15• But I say to you who are listening; Continue to love your enemies, to do good to those hating you. (Luke 6:27)

[Question] What counsel did Jesus give in regard to our enemies, or persons hating us?

16• Do not let yourself be conquered by the evil, but keep conquering the evil with the good. (Romans 12:21)

[Question] What should anointed Christians not let the evil do to them?

[Question] What do they want to become conquerors over?

17• And to toil, working with our own hands. When being reviled, we bless. When being persecuted, we bear up. (1 Corinthians 4:12)

[Question] How did early Christians react to provocation?

18• Concerning kings and all those who are in high station, in order, that we may go on leading a calm and quiet life, with full godly devotion and seriousness. (1 Timothy 2:2)

[Question] Whom should Christians pray for, and to what end?

Matthew 5:45• That you may prove yourselves sons of your Father who is in the heavens, since he makes his sun rise upon wicked people and good, and makes it rain upon righteous people and unrighteous.

1• Why behave in such a manner toward those who would like to hurt us. Because this is how Yehowah God acts toward those who hate him, or who fail to appreciate his goodness. He makes his Sun rise upon both good men and bad ones. He gives rains from the heavens to all the sons of mankind blessing them all. His wondrous creation is there for all to partake of.

[Question] Whose example will we be following, if we do so?

[Question] How does Yehowah God demonstrate his love for all men?

2• Happy are the peaceable, since they will be called, sons of

God. (Matthew 5:9)

[Question] Who will be called sons of God, and why?

- 3• Therefore, become imitators of God, as beloved children. (Ephesians 5:1)**

[Question] What should we as Christians want to imitate?

- 4• To the contrary, continue to love your enemies and to do good and to lend without interest, not hoping for anything back. Then your reward will be great, and you will be sons of the Most High, because he is kind toward the unthankful and wicked. (Luke 6:35)**

[Question] How does Jesus counsel us to live, and what can we expect if we do?

- 5• Although, indeed, he did not leave himself without witness, in that he did good, giving you rains from heaven and fruitful seasons, filling your hearts to the full with food and good cheer. (Acts of Apostles 14:17)**

[Question] What witness had Yehowah God given, that he does good?

- 6• Now there was as yet no bush of the field found in the earth and no vegetation of the field was as yet sprouting, because Yehowah God had not made it rain upon the earth and there was no man to cultivate the ground. (Genesis 2:5)**

[Question] What was the situation of the earth in the beginning?

- 7• And it came about after many days that Yehowah's own word came to Elijah in the third year, saying; Go, show yourself to Ahab, as I am determined to give rain upon the surface of the ground. (1 Kings 18:1)**

[Question] What did Yehowah God bring an end to through Elijah?

- 8• Yet he himself has filled their houses with good things, and the very counsel of wicked ones has kept far from me. (Job 22:18)**

[Question] What counsel did Job keep far from himself?

- 9• When I see your heavens, the works of your fingers, the moon and the stars that you have prepared. (Psalms 8:3)**

[Question] How should men react to the powerful and glorious heavens they see all around them?

- 10• From men, by your hand, O Yehowah, from men of this**

system of things, whose share is in this life, and whose belly you fill with your concealed treasure, who are satisfied with sons and who do lay up for their children what they leave over. (Psalms 17:14)

[Question] How does Yehowah God bless mankind, and what things does he give to them?

- 11· To you the day belongs, also, to you the night belongs. You yourself prepared the luminary, even the Sun. (Psalms 74:16)**

[Question] Who owns the universe, and who made it in all its glory?

- 12· He is watering the mountains from his upper chambers. With the fruitage of your works the earth is satisfied. (Psalms 104:13)**

[Question] How does the earth respond to the works of Yehowah God?

- 13· The One giving food to all flesh, for his loving-kindness is to time indefinite. (Psalms 136:25)**

[Question] What does Yehowah God give to all the different kinds of flesh?

- 14· Yehowah is good to all, and his mercies are over all his works. (Psalms 145:9)**

[Question] What is Yehowah God toward all living things, and what is over all his works?

- 15· The One who is covering the heavens with clouds, the One preparing rain for the earth, the One making the mountains to sprout green grass. (Psalms 147:8)**

[Question] Who makes it rain, giving vegetation a chance to grow?

- 16· The one of little means and the man of oppressions have met each other, but Yehowah is lighting up the eyes of them both. (Proverbs 29:13)**

[Question] Who gives good things to both righteous and unrighteous men, satisfying them both?

- 17· All are the same in what all have. One eventuality there is to the righteous one and the wicked one, the good one and the clean one, and the unclean one, and the one sacrificing, and the one that is not sacrificing. The good one is the same as the sinner. The one swearing is the same as whoever has been afraid of a sworn oath.**

(Ecclesiastes 9:2)

[Question] What eventuality exists for both righteous men and unrighteous?

- 18· This is what Yehowah, the Giver of the sun for light by day, the statutes of the moon and the stars for light by night, the One stirring up the sea, that its waves may become boisterous, the One whose name is Yehowah of armies, has said. (Jeremiah 31:35)**

[Question] Who made the Sun, Moon and stars to light up the earth?

- 19· But you have entirely forgotten the exhortation which addresses you as sons; My son, do not belittle the discipline from Yehowah, neither give out when you are corrected by him. (Hebrews 12:5)**

[Question] What should men who love Yehowah God not forget, nor push aside?

Matthew 5:46· And if you love those loving you, what reward do you have? Are not also the tax collectors doing the same thing?

- 1· Do not most people love those loving them. What benefit really is there in our reacting this way, for it is expected of everyone? Even the Jews who considered all tax collectors as wicked people, reacted in this way toward those whom they loved.**

[Question] Is there any special benefit for us, if we love only those loving us?

- 2· And if you love those loving you, of what credit is it to you? For even the sinners love those loving them. (Luke 6:32)**

[Question] Who also love those loving them?

Matthew 5:47· And if you greet your brothers only, what extraordinary thing are you doing? Are not also the people of the nations doing the same thing?

- 1· Also should we greet only those whom we already know, what extraordinary thing would this be, most everyone behaves this way. But Christians should be hospitable, greeting and helping others freely, getting to know them.**

[Question] Is it anything extraordinary to greet only those we already know?

[Question] How should Christians approach strangers?

- 2· And if you do good to those doing good to you, really of what credit is it to you? Even the sinners do the same. (Luke 6:33)**

[Question] What do even sinners do, and so will we benefit ourselves with God by copying their example?

Matthew 5:48· You must accordingly be perfect,¹ as your heavenly Father is perfect.

Footnote: Or, complete

- 1· Jesus now shows, that for his anointed Christian followers more is expected. They must perfect their personalities to bring them into imitation of our heavenly father's fine personality. His personality is perfect or complete, lacking in nothing. They must put on the new personality, which was created according to God's will, in true righteousness and loyalty.**

[Question] What then, is expected of anointed Christians, and who should they perfectly imitate?

[Question] Whose personality is the new personality in imitation of?

- 2· Speak to the entire assembly of the sons of Israel, and you must say to them, you should prove yourselves holy, because I Yehowah your God am holy. (Leviticus 19:2)**

[Question] What must those serving Yehowah God become in themselves, and why?

- 3· You should prove yourself faultless with Yehowah your God. (Deuteronomy 18:13)**

[Question] What should men prove themselves as before God?

- 4· Continue becoming merciful, just as your Father is merciful. (Luke 6:36)**

[Question] Why must men become merciful?

- 5· Because it is written: You must be holy, because I am holy. (1 Peter 1:16)**

[Question] Why must anointed Christians be holy?

- 6· Therefore, become imitators of God, as beloved children. (Ephesians 5:1)**

[Question] Who should Christians become imitators of, and how?

- 7· But let endurance have its work complete, that you may be complete and sound in all respects, not lacking in anything. (James 1:4)**

[Question] What will endurance build within Christians?

- 8· And should put on the new personality which was created according to God's will in true righteousness and loyalty. (Ephesians 4:24)**

[Question] Whose will was the new personality created according to, and what marks it?

Matthew Chapter 6

Matthew 6:1 Take good care not to practice your righteousness in front of men in order to be observed by them, otherwise you will have no reward with your Father who is in the heavens.

1• Jesus now addresses a problem that was prominent in his day and also today, because it is part of human nature to want to appear righteous before others. However we should not perform righteousness just to have a good standing before our fellowman.

[Question] What problem does Jesus now address, and why?

[Question] Should other men, be the real reason we act righteously?

2• Righteousness is not for show, righteousness comes from fine principles that govern over all our lives, and we should practice righteousness because we love it, and because it is the right thing to do always.

[Question] How should we feel with our hearts about righteousness?

3• Men who practice righteousness just to be lauded by others have the wrong understanding of righteousness, and they are having their reward in full for their actions while they are upon the earth. There will thus be no reward to them from Yehowah God, for they do things with the wrong motivation.

[Question] What can we say about men who practice righteousness to please others, will God reward them ever?

4• For I say to you that if your righteousness does not abound more than that of the scribes and Pharisees, you will by no means enter into the kingdom of the heavens. (**Matthew 5:20**)

[Question] Who set a bad example in this behavior, and would such ones enter into the Kingdom of heaven?

5• All the works they do they do to be viewed by men, for they broaden the scripture-containing cases that they wear as safeguards, and enlarge the fringes of their garments. (**Matthew 23:5**)

[Question] Why did the scribes and Pharisees do all the things that they did?

6• Do not become righteous overmuch, nor show yourself excessively wise. Why should you cause desolation to yourself? (**Ecclesiastes 7:16**)

[Question] What should men avoid doing overmuch, for what will result from this?

Matthew 6:2 Hence, when you go making gifts of mercy, do not blow a trumpet ahead of you, just as the hypocrites do, in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may be glorified by men. Truly I say to you, they are having their reward in full.

1• Among the righteous acts we could do, are gifts of mercy toward others who are in need. Now some men do these acts, so that other men will think well of them. The truly righteous man does them because he cares about those in need, and it does his heart good to help them with his excess. A righteous man does not even care if anyone sees what he is doing.

[Question] What good deeds are there available for men to do, and why should they do them?

[Question] What does a truly righteous man not even concern himself with?

2• However men who do these acts, so that others will think well of them, are having the only reward, that they will ever gain for doing such things, the adulation of other men.

[Question] What reward are men gaining for righteous acts performed so that others will see them?

3• But in Joppa there was a certain disciple named Tabitha, which, when translated, means Dorcas. She abounded in good deeds and gifts of mercy that she was rendering. **(Acts of Apostles 9:36)**

[Question] How did her Christian sisters feel about the works of Dorcas?

4• A devout man and one fearing God together with all his household, and he made many gifts of mercy to the people and made supplication to God continually. **(Acts of Apostles 10:2)**

[Question] What kind of a man was Cornelius before becoming an anointed Christian?

5• And if I give all my belongings to feed others, and if I hand over my body, that I may boast, but do not have love, I am not profited at all. **(1 Corinthians 13:3)**

[Question] What might a man do without love, to no avail?

6• I fast twice a week, I give the tenth of all things I acquire.

(Luke 18:12)

[Question] How did the Pharisees pride themselves on their service to God, yet was this pleasing to him?

- 7· A multitude of men will proclaim each one his own loving-kindness, but a faithful man who can find? (Proverbs 20:6)**

[Question] What do many men proclaim about themselves, yet are there many truly faithful men?

- 8· Indeed for quarreling and struggle you would fast, and for striking with the fist of wickedness. Did you not keep fasting as in the day for making your voice to be heard in the height? (Isaiah 58:4)**

[Question] How did the unrighteous Jews fast, and what was wrong with their fasting?

- 9· Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! Because you traverse sea and dry land to make one proselyte, and when he becomes one you make him a subject for Gehenna twice as much so as yourselves. (Matthew 23:15)**

[Question] When the Pharisees made a new convert, what did they then make him into, through their teachings and wicked ways?

- 10· Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! Because you build the graves of the prophets and decorate the memorial tombs of the righteous ones. (Matthew 23:29)**

[Question] How did the Pharisees show honor on the surface, for the men their forefathers killed?

- 11· But woe to you rich persons, because you are having your consolation in full. (Luke 6:24)**

[Question] Why did Jesus state, that only woe would come upon the rich?

- 12· Consequently he said to them; You are those who declare yourselves righteous before men, but God knows your hearts, because what is lofty among men is a disgusting thing in God's sight. (Luke 16:15)**

[Question] Who declared the Pharisees righteous before men?

[Question] How though, did Yehowah God view them, and why?

Matthew 6:3· But you, when making gifts of mercy, do not let your left hand know what your right is doing.

1• The truly righteous man when making gifts of mercy, does not even think about who might be watching, and is not even doing so to please himself, but because it is the right thing to do.

[Question] What does the truly righteous man think, and why does he do righteous acts, or gifts of mercy?

2• Then the righteous ones will answer him with the words, Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty, and give you something to drink? (Matthew 25:37)

[Question] What question do the righteous ones in Jesus' illustration ask of the Lord, for what were they not aware of?

Matthew 6:4•• That your gifts of mercy may be in secret. Then your Father who is looking on in secret will repay you.

1• True gifts of mercy should be done in secret, for this is in imitation of Yehowah God himself, who works his wonders in secret, making gifts to those doing his will without show or fanfare. The one who makes such gifts of mercy is in effect lending to Yehowah God, and he is the one who will repay him.

[Question] How should true gifts of mercy be done?

[Question] How does Yehowah God himself act, when making gifts of mercy?

[Question] Who is the one helping the needy and poor, lending to?

2• He that is showing favor to the lowly one is lending to Yehowah, and his treatment He will repay to him. (Proverbs 19:17)

[Question] Who is the one showing favor to the lowly one lending to, and so who will repay his kind acts?

3• And whoever gives one of these little ones only a cup of cold water to drink, because he is a disciple, I tell you truly, he will by no means lose his reward. (Matthew 10:42)

[Question] What did Jesus state would not be forgotten, about one who did even a small thing for one of his disciples?

4• Jehoiada the priest now took a chest and bored a hole in its lid and put it beside the altar on the right as a person comes into the house of Yehowah, and there the priests, the doorkeepers, put all the money that was being brought into the house of Yehowah. (2 Kings 12:9)

[Question] How was money collected in the temple, and did anyone know who gave what?

Matthew 6:5 **Also, when you pray, you must not be as the hypocrites, because they like to pray standing in the synagogues and on the corners of the broad ways to be visible to men. Truly I say to you, they are having their reward in full.**

1• Jesus now condemns the unrighteous Scribes and Pharisees of his day who liked to pray publicly, so as to be visible to men, because it was the adulation of men, that they were really seeking. To all such men, Jesus counseled, that they were having all the reward that they would ever gain for such actions, for there would be no reward from Yehowah God. Their worship was hypocritical, and God himself was not fooled by it.

[Question] What did Jesus condemn, that the scribes and Pharisees did regularly in public?

[Question] Would there be any reward from Yehowah God for this, give reasons?

2• The Pharisee stood and began to pray these things to himself, O God, I thank you I am not as the rest of men, extortioners, unrighteous, adulterers, or even as this tax collector. (Luke 18:11)

[Question] How did the Pharisee feel about himself, when he came to the temple to pray?

3• When you are fasting, stop becoming sad-faced like the hypocrites, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear to men to be fasting. Truly I say to you, they are having their reward in full. (Matthew 6:16)

[Question] How should one who is fasting not try to appear, and why?

4• All the works they do, they do to be viewed by men, for they broaden the scripture-containing cases that they wear as safeguards, and enlarge the fringes of their garments. (Matthew 23:5)

[Question] What authority did these men try to broaden out?

Matthew 6:6 **You, however, when you pray, go into your private room and, after shutting your door, pray to your Father who is in secret, then your Father who looks on in secret will repay you.**

1• When anointed Christians pray they should go into a private place, closing the door to be alone with Yehowah God in secrecy, and in spirit. Then Yehowah God who also looks on in secret, will

be with them and guide them. One must be desirous of doing the will of God, to gain his blessings.

[Question] How should anointed Christian sons of God pray?

[Question] How is Yehowah God always looking on?

[Question] What must every person seeking God's blessing need to concern himself with?

2· Then he came in and closed the door behind them both and began to pray to Yehowah. (2 Kings 4:33)

[Question] How did Elisha act when resurrecting a young boy?

3· Go, my people, enter into your interior rooms, and shut your doors behind you. Hide yourself for but a moment until the denunciation passes over. (Isaiah 26:20)

[Question] Where are God's people counseled to go to hide themselves from the denunciation?

4· In the progress of these days he went out into the mountain to pray, and he continued the whole night in prayer to God. (Luke 6:12)

[Question] Where did Jesus himself go to pray, and how long did he pray on several occasions?

5· At that he turned his face to the wall and began to pray to Yehowah, saying; (2 Kings 20:2)

[Question] Where did Hezekiah face, when told that he was about to die?

6· At that Hezekiah turned his face to the wall and began to pray to Yehowah. (Isaiah 38:2)

[Question] Where did Hezekiah face, when told of his imminent death, and what did he then do?

7· But after saying good-bye to them he went off into a mountain to pray. (Mark 6:46)

[Question] Where did Jesus often go to, to pray?

8· Also, accept the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the spirit, that is, God's word. (Ephesians 6:17)

[Question] What is the sword of the spirit, and how must we use it when alone?

Matthew 6:7 **But when praying, do not say the same things over and over again,¹ just as the people of the nations do, for they imagine they will get a hearing for their use of many words.**

Footnote: Or, do not babble words; do not utter empty repetitions

1• Jesus now counsels them as to how to pray. They should not just repeat some prepared prayer over and over again. God is not interested in such liturgies. He wants us to open our hearts to him and tell him of our concerns and cares.

[Question] What counsel did Jesus give regarding prayer, and how have many misconstrued his Model Prayer?

[Question] What does Yehowah God want to hear from us in prayer?

2• People of the nations, and even many supposed Christians today use prepared prayers, many even going against Jesus' own counsel by simply repeating the model prayer, which is after all a model for prayer, or a pattern for prayer, showing us the topics that are pertinent, and then we should adapt it to the concerns of our own hearts.

[Question] What do many Christians today use for prayer, and does this fit with Jesus' own counsel above?

[Question] What does the model prayer give us, and how should we use it?

3• Sometimes a simple thank you is all that is needed. Yehowah God is not impressed with long windy words or eloquent speech. Rather a heartfelt thank you, and an opening of the heart, is all that is required.

[Question] What is most often needed to express to God?

[Question] Is Yehowah God impressed with eloquent speech and windy words, what does impress him?

4• Accordingly they took the young bull that he gave them. Then they dressed it, and they kept calling upon the name of Baal from morning till noon, saying; O Baal, answer us! But there was no voice, and there was no one answering. And they kept limping around the altar that they had made. (1 Kings 18:26)

[Question] What did the Baal priests do, and yet could an idol ever answer them?

5• Do not hurry yourself as regards your mouth, and as for your heart, let it not be hasty to bring forth a word before the true God. For the true God is in the heavens, but you are

on the earth. That is why your words should prove to be few. (**Ecclesiastes 5:2**)

[Question] What should men not become hasty to do?

6· And when you spread out your palms, I hide my eyes from you. Even though you make many prayers, I am not listening, with bloodshed your very hands have become filled. (Isaiah 1:15**)**

[Question] Does Yehowah God listen to men, whose hands are filled with bloodshed?

Matthew 6:8· So, do not make yourselves like them, for God your Father knows what things you are needing before ever you ask him.

1· We should therefore not imitate people like that, who repeat prepared prayers, and make long windy speeches to God in prayer. Yehowah God already knows what things we are needing before we ever approach to him, often he knows this even better than we know of our own needs. Our dependence upon him, our loyalty and our thankfulness are the things he treasures the most.

[Question] What does Yehowah God already know, before we ask him, and so what does our heartfelt prayer show him about us?

2· For all these are the things the nations of the world are eagerly pursuing, but your Father knows you need these things. (Luke 12:30**)**

[Question] What things are the nations of the earth eagerly pursuing after, and what does God surely know about our needs before we ever ask him?

3· And I myself have said, O how I proceeded to place you among the sons and to give you the desirable land, the hereditary possession of the ornament of the armies of the nations! And I further said; My Father! You people will call out to me, and from following me you people will not turn back. (Jeremiah 3:19**)**

[Question] Why did Yehowah God give to his people the Promised Land, the best of the land, and what then did he expect from them?

Matthew 6:9· You must pray, then, this way. Our Father in the heavens, let your name be sanctified.¹

Footnote: Or, be held sacred; be treated as holy Greek, *ha-gi-a-sthe'to*; Latin, *sanc-ti-fi-ce'tur*; J17, 18(Hebrew), *yith-qad-dash'*, let be sanctified See (Exodus 29:43) Footnote Sanctified

1• Jesus now launches into a discussion of the matters of the heart that should be of primary concern, and that serve as proper matters for prayer for anointed Christians. This is not a prayer, but a model of the topics that we should be concerned with, and we should discuss with Yehowah God.

[Question] What concerns does Jesus now show are proper concerns for prayer?

[Question] What is the model prayer not?

2• Our first concern should be for the name of Yehowah God. We should want his name or reputation to be held up on high by all persons. He is ever deserving of our respect and honor, for he made us and we all depend upon him for all that life entails. Should any other person defame his name, then we should be the first to stand up for it in his defense.

[Question] What should be our first concern?

[Question] Can we be honoring a name we do not even use, for most within Christendom use a title God, and not his name Yehowah?

3• Then he said to them; Whenever you pray, say; Father, let your name be sanctified. Let your kingdom come. (Luke 11:2)

[Question] What two things should be of the most importance in prayers we make to God?

4• And I used to appear to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob as God Almighty, but as respects my name Yehowah I did not make myself known to them. (Exodus 6:3)

[Question] What did Yehowah God make known more fully through his servant Moses at the thornbush?

5• That people may know that you, whose name is Yehowah, you alone are the Most High over all the earth. (Psalms 83:18)

[Question] Whose name is the Most High over all the earth?

[Question] If your Bible reads differently here, then what should that tell you about those who translated it, and their own lack of respect for God's holy name?

[Question] How many times does the name of Yehowah appear within the earliest extant manuscripts of the Bible? *Hint - Over 7,000 times*

6• I am Yehowah. That is my name. To no one else shall I give

my own glory, neither my praise to graven images. (Isaiah 42:8)

[Question] What does Isaiah state that God's name is?

- 7· For your Grand Maker is your husbandly owner, Yehowah of armies being his name. The Holy One of Israel is your Repurchaser. The God of the whole earth he will be called. (Isaiah 54:5)**

[Question] What is the name of God, his personal name?

- 8· And I shall certainly sanctify my great name, which was being profaned among the nations, which you profaned in the midst of them. The nations will have to know that I am Yehowah, is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Yehowah, when I am sanctified among you before their eyes. (Ezekiel 36:23)**

[Question] What does Yehowah God promise to do before all the nations of the earth, and what name must they come to know?

- 9· And I shall certainly magnify myself and sanctify myself and make myself known before the eyes of many nations, and they will have to know, that I am Yehowah. (Ezekiel 38:23)**

[Question] What does Yehowah God plan to do before the eyes of all the nations, and what will this do for his glorious name?

- 10· Then Moses said to Aaron; This is what Yehowah has spoken, saying; Among those near to me let me be sanctified, and before the face of all the people let me be glorified. And Aaron kept silent. (Leviticus 10:3)**

[Question] How should all those near to God treat his holy name?

- 11· For the reason that you men acted undutifully toward me in the middle of the sons of Israel at the waters of Meribah of Kadesh in the wilderness of Zin, for the reason that you men did not sanctify me in the middle of the sons of Israel. (Deuteronomy 32:51)**

[Question] What did the people of Israel fail to do at Meribah, and how did they treat God's name then?

- 12· And let your own name become great to time indefinite, saying; Yehowah of armies is God over Israel, and let the very house of your servant David become firmly established before you. (2 Samuel 7:26)**

[Question] How should God's name be treated to time indefinite?

- 13· And Yehowah went on to say to him; I have heard your prayer and your request for favor with which you requested favor before me. I have sanctified this house that you have built by putting my name there to time indefinite, and my eyes and my heart will certainly prove to be there always. (1 Kings 9:3)**

[Question] How did Yehowah God answer the prayer of faithful King Solomon at the dedication of the temple in Jerusalem?

- 14· And let your name prove faithful and become great to time indefinite, saying; Yehowah of armies, the God of Israel, is God to Israel, and let the house of David your servant be one lasting before you. (1 Chronicles 17:24)**

[Question] What should Yehowah God's name prove to be, and what should it become among his people?

- 15· And Asa began to call to Yehowah his God and say; O Yehowah, as to helping, it does not matter with you whether there are many or those with no power. Help us, O Yehowah our God, for upon you we do lean, and in your name we have come against this crowd. O Yehowah, you are our God. Do not let mortal man retain strength against you. (2 Chronicles 14:11)**

[Question] How did Asa lean upon the strength of Yehowah God, and in whose name did he come upon the enemy?

- 16· And he proceeded to say; O Yehowah the God of our forefathers, are you not God in the heavens, and are you not dominating over all the kingdoms of the nations, and are there not in your hand power and mightiness, with no one to hold his ground against you? (2 Chronicles 20:6)**

[Question] Who is dominating over all the Kingdoms of the earth, and what is in his hand?

- 17· Do pay attention to the sound of my cry for help, O my King and my God, because to you I pray. (Psalms 5:2)**

[Question] How did the Psalmist express his dependence upon Yehowah God in prayer?

- 18· O Yehowah our Lord, how majestic your name is in all the earth, you whose dignity is recounted above the heavens! (Psalms 8:1)**

[Question] Whose name is majestic in all the earth?

- 19• For your name's sake, O Yehowah, you must even forgive my error, for it is considerable. (Psalms 25:11)**

[Question] Why did the Psalmist ask God to forgive him, for the sake of what?

- 20• But our God is in the heavens, everything that he delighted to do he has done. (Psalms 115:3)**

[Question] Where does Yehowah God reside, and what had he accomplished?

- 21• To you I have raised my eyes, O you who are dwelling in the heavens. (Psalms 123:1)**

[Question] Where does the true God Yehowah reside?

- 22• Do not hurry yourself as regards your mouth. As for your heart, let it not be hasty to bring forth a word before the true God. For the true God is in the heavens, but you are on the earth. That is why your words should prove to be few. (Ecclesiastes 5:2)**

[Question] How many should our words be when coming in prayer before the true God, and why?

- 23• A name is better than good oil, and the day of death than the day of one's being born. (Ecclesiastes 7:1)**

[Question] What is better than good oil?

[Question] Why is a man better off at death than at birth?

- 24• For when he sees his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they will sanctify my name, and they will certainly sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and the God of Israel they will regard with awe. (Isaiah 29:23)**

[Question] What do sons of God, his spiritual children do regarding his name?

- 25• For that reason my people will know my name, even for that reason in that day, because I am the One that is speaking. Look! It is I. (Isaiah 52:6)**

[Question] What does Yehowah God promise, that people will know in that day?

- 26• We have for a long time become as those over whom you did not rule, as those upon whom your name had not been called. (Isaiah 63:19)**

[Question] What had the Israelites become like, after many years of decadence, in Isaiah's day?

- 27· As when a fire ignites the brushwood, and the fire makes the very water boil up, in order to make your name known to your adversaries, that on account of you the nations might be agitated! (**Isaiah 64:2**)

[Question] How does Yehowah God illustrate, how he will make his name known to the nations?

- 28· And you will be bound to come up against my people Israel, like clouds to cover the land. In the final part of the days it will occur, and I shall certainly bring you against my land, for the purpose that the nations may know me when I sanctify myself in you before their eyes, O Gog. (**Ezekiel 38:16**)

[Question] What will Yehowah God do in the final part of the days when Gog attacks his people?

- 29· A son, for his part, honors a father, and a servant, his grand master. So if I am a father, where is the honor to me? And if I am a grand master, where is the fear of me? Yehowah of armies has said to you, O priests who are despising my name. And you have said; In what way have we despised your name? (**Malachi 1:6**)

[Question] Whom did Yehowah God call to account in Malachi's day, for what was lacking among them?

- 30· Moreover, do not call anyone your father on earth, for one is your Father, the heavenly One. (**Matthew 23:9**)

[Question] Should anointed Christians ever call another man 'Father' on earth?

- 31· And I have made your name known to them and will make it known, in order, that the love with which you loved me may be in them, and I in union with them. (**John 17:26**)

[Question] Why did Jesus state that he had made, and would continue to make, the name of Yehowah God known to his disciples?

Matthew 6:10· Let your kingdom come. Let your will take place, as in heaven, also upon earth.

- 1· The second most important thing anointed Christians should hope and look forward to, is for the promised Kingdom of God to take shape upon the earth, and also in heaven, for that will spell

relief for all creation, and will bring in a time of peace for a thousand years. It is an act of faith to pray for such to come, showing that we look to God for relief from troubles and suffering within this present world, run by Satan the Devil.

[Question] What is the second most important subject for prayer for anointed Christians, and why?

2· Today many professed Christians petition only worldly governments of men for relief from their troubles, and such men politicize their hoped for solutions, while never looking to God directly for help. True anointed Christians look only to the Kingdom of God for relief from the troubles that lie before them.

[Question] Who do most professed Christians today look to and petition to change their circumstances, and who do they rarely apply to?

[Question] Since Christ's Kingdom is no part of this world, should we even expect worldly men to effect changes like the Kingdom alone will bring?

3· And in the days of those kings the God of heaven will set up a kingdom that will never be brought to ruin. And the kingdom itself will not be passed on to any other people. It will crush and put an end to all these kingdoms, and it itself will stand to times indefinite. (Daniel 2:44)

Question] Who will set up or bring into being the Kingdom of God?

[Question] How long will people then live under this Kingdom?

[Question] What will it do to all other kingdoms standing in its way when it takes up its power to rule the earth?

4· Keep on, then, seeking first the kingdom and his righteousness, and all these other things will be added to you. (Matthew 6:33)

[Question] What then, should anointed Christians keep on seeking, and what will then be added to them?

5· And the seventh angel blew his trumpet. And loud voices occurred in heaven, saying; The kingdom of the world did become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will rule as king forever and ever. (Revelation 11:15)

[Question] What proclamation was made in heaven in the Revelation account about this Kingdom?

6· Again, for the second time, he went off and prayed, saying; My Father, if it is not possible for this to pass away except I drink it, let your will take place. (Matthew 26:42)

[Question] Whose will was Jesus Christ himself most concerned with accomplishing?

- 7• You are worthy, Yehowah, even our God, to receive the glory and the honor and the power, because you created all things, and because of your will they existed and were created. (Revelation 4:11)**

[Question] Why is Yehowah God worthy to receive the glory, honor and power?

- 8• And just a little while longer, and the wicked one will be no more, and you will certainly give attention to his place, and he will not be. (Psalms 37:10)**

[Question] Who will not be on the earth much longer, and how will their absence be noticed?

- 9• And he said to him; Truly I tell you today, you will be with me in Paradise. (Luke 23:43)**

[Question] What promise did Jesus make to the evildoer killed alongside of him?

- 10• And I have hope toward God, which hope these men themselves also entertain, that there is going to be a resurrection of both the righteous and the unrighteous. (Acts of Apostles 24:15)**

[Question] What is the hope of true Christians?

- 11• Whose will is, that all sorts of men should be saved, and come to an accurate knowledge of truth. (1 Timothy 2:4)**

[Question] What is God's will for all sorts of men, and how only, will this salvation come to them?

- 12• But the thing was bad in the eyes of Samuel inasmuch as they had said; Do give us a king to judge us, and Samuel began to pray to Yehowah. (1 Samuel 8:6)**

[Question] How did Samuel and Yehowah God view the Israelites' request for a king to rule over them?

- 13• Yours, O Yehowah, are the greatness and the mightiness and the beauty and the excellency and the dignity. For everything in the heavens and in the earth is yours. Yours is the kingdom, O Yehowah, the One also lifting yourself up as head over all. (1 Chronicles 29:11)**

[Question] What belongs to Yehowah God, and why?

- 14· Unless Yehowah himself builds the house, it is to no avail that its builders have worked hard on it. Unless Yehowah himself guards the city, it is to no avail that the guard has kept awake. (Psalms 127:1)**

[Question] What have many worked hard on, to no purpose?

- 15· And this Good News of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for a witness to all the nations, and then the end will come. (Matthew 24:14)**

[Question] What must be preached in all the earth, before the end can come?

[Question] Has this work been done, at this late date?

- 16· Then he said to them; Whenever you pray, say; Father, let your name be sanctified. Let your kingdom come. (Luke 11:2)**

[Question] What should be the primary concerns for Christians in prayer?

- 17· Saying; Father, if you wish, remove this cup from me. Nevertheless, let, not my will, but yours take place. (Luke 22:42)**

[Question] Whose will was Jesus most concerned with accomplishing?

Matthew 6:11· Give us today our bread for this day.

- 1· Humans have a need for food, and there is no getting around this need. Yehowah God surely knows this, and he will make provision for his people to feed them when they need his help in obtaining food. Therefore this is a proper concern for Christians in their prayers.**

[Question] What need is it proper for Christians to be concerned over, and is rest and water also needed?

- 2· A young man I used to be, I have also grown old, and yet I have not seen anyone righteous left entirely, nor his offspring looking for bread. (Psalms 37:25)**

[Question] What did faithful King David state, about what he had seen within his own life experience?

- 3· Untruth and the lying word put far away from me. Give me neither poverty nor riches. Let me devour the food prescribed for me. (Proverbs 30:8)**

[Question] What did the writer of the Proverb ask for in life?

- 4• So, never be anxious about the next day, for the next day will have its own anxieties. Sufficient for each day is its own badness. (**Matthew 6:34**)

[Question] Why should we not worry about what the future brings?

- 5• So, having sustenance and covering, **we shall be content with these things.** (**1 Timothy 6:8**)

[Question] What things should we be content with?

[Question] Are most people content with these things?

- 6• Then Yehowah said to Moses; Here I am raining down bread for you from the heavens, and the people must go out and pick up each his amount day for day, in order, that I may put them to the test, as to whether they will walk in my Law or not. (**Exodus 16:4**)

[Question] How did Yehowah God put the Israelites to the test as to their dependence upon him, through the gift of the manna?

[Question] Could they have survived in that wilderness without the manna, or even have gotten to some place where they could survive?

- 7• And they would pick it up morning by morning, each one in proportion to his eating. When the sun got hot, it melted. (**Exodus 16:21**)

[Question] What would the Israelites pick up off the ground in the wilderness day by day for forty years?

- 8• In case you go into the vineyard of your fellowman, you must eat only enough grapes for you to satisfy your soul, but you must not put any into a receptacle of yours. (**Deuteronomy 23:24**)

[Question] What were people allowed to do then in anyone's vineyard, and what were they not allowed to do?

- 9• And she proceeded to get up with her daughters-in-law and to return from the fields of Moab, for she had heard in the field of Moab that Yehowah had turned his attention to his people by giving them bread. (**Ruth 1:6**)

[Question] Why did Naomi decide to return to her homeland of Israel from Moab?

- 10• And it must occur that from the torrent valley you should drink, and the ravens I shall certainly command to supply you food there. (**1 Kings 17:4**)

[Question] How did Yehowah God provide food for Elijah in the wilderness?

Matthew 6:12 **And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors.**

1• Next anointed Christians should ask Yehowah God to forgive them their debts, as they have likewise forgiven others who owe them. Therefore our own forgiveness is contingent upon forgiving others. Did not Yehowah God forgive us all our trespasses against him? Therefore we should go forth doing the same way also.

[Question] What should Christians then ask go to forgive them of, and what must they do first?

[Question] Does this counsel reflect money or all sins?

[Question] Who should anointed Christians imitate in all things, and how has he forgiven them?

2• Then Peter came up and said to him; Lord, how many times is my brother to sin against me, and am I to forgive him? Up to seven times? (**Matthew 18:21**)

[Question] What question did Jesus' disciples ask him regarding being forgiving?

3• And when you stand praying, forgive whatever you have against anyone, in order, that your Father who is in the heavens may also forgive you your trespasses. (**Mark 11:25**)

[Question] What must Christians do, to gain forgiveness from Yehowah God?

4• And forgive us our sins, for we ourselves also forgive everyone that is in debt to us. Do not bring us into temptation. (**Luke 11:4**)

[Question] Whom must Christians forgive to gain forgiveness from Yehowah God?

5• This is what you are to say to Joseph; I beseech you, pardon, please, the revolt of your brothers and their sin, in that they have rendered evil to you. And now pardon, please, the revolt of the servants of your father's God. And Joseph burst into tears when they spoke to him. (**Genesis 50:17**)

[Question] How did Joseph genuinely forgive his brothers for their trying to kill him, thus rising above their jealousy and murderous hatred?

- 6• Ought you not, in turn, to have had mercy on your fellow slave, as I also had mercy on you? (**Matthew 18:33**)

[Question] What was the wicked slave counseled in Jesus' parable, that he lacked?

- 7• Even if he sins seven times a day against you and he comes back to you seven times, saying, I repent, you must forgive him. (**Luke 17:4**)

[Question] How many time a day should we be willing to forgive a brother, who asks for our forgiveness?

Matthew 6:13•• **And do not bring us into temptation, but deliver¹ us from the wicked one.²**

Footnote: Or, rescue

Footnote: Or, from what is wicked

- 1• Another concern is for anointed Christians not to come into temptation. It is a constant struggle while we are in imperfect bodies to resist the desires of our fallen flesh, and it is a proper concern for anointed Christians to pray for deliverance from this. Also Jesus showed, that we should ask Yehowah God for help in resisting the wicked one, Satan the Devil, and his designs against us.

[Question] What is a further concern for anointed Christians, living within Satan the Devil's world?

[Question] What do Christians thus have a constant struggle with?

[Question] Who can thus help Christians to endure and be conquerors?

- 2• Keep on the watch and pray continually, that you may not enter into temptation. The spirit, of course, is eager, but the flesh is weak. (**Matthew 26:41**)

[Question] What counsel did Jesus give to avoid temptation?

- 3• No temptation has taken you, except what is common to men. But God is faithful, and he will not let you be tempted beyond what you can bear, but along with the temptation, he will also make the way out, in order for you to be able to endure it. (**1 Corinthians 10:13**)

[Question] What can all men be sure of in their Christian course?

- 4• Because you kept the word about my endurance, I will also keep you from the hour of test, which is to come upon the whole inhabited earth, to put a test upon those dwelling

on the earth. (**Revelation 3:10**)

[Question] What hour will Yehowah God keep faithful ones from, and why?

- 5· Provide escape for the lowly one and the poor one. Out of the hand of the wicked ones deliver them. (**Psalms 82:4**)

[Question] How should Christians assist the poor and lowly ones?

- 6· O you lovers of Yehowah, hate what is bad. He is guarding the souls of his loyal ones. Out of the hand of the wicked ones he delivers them. (**Psalms 97:10**)

[Question] What should all lovers of Yehowah hate?

[Question] Who delivers righteous ones out of the hands of wicked ones?

- 7· I request you, not to take them out of the world, but to watch over them, because of the wicked one. (**John 17:15**)

[Question] What request did Jesus make concerning his disciples, and why?

- 8· We know we originate with God, but the whole world is lying in the power of the wicked one. (**1 John 5:19**)

[Question] Where is the whole world lying, and under whose power?

- 9· And now, my lord, as Yehowah is living and as your soul is living, Yehowah has held you back from entering into bloodguilt and having your own hand come to your salvation. And now, let your enemies and those seeking injury to my Lord, become like Nabal. (**1 Samuel 25:26**)

[Question] How did Abigail counsel David in wisdom?

- 10· You will bring me out of the net that they have hidden for me, for you are my fortress. (**Psalms 31:4**)

[Question] Whom did the Psalmist look to, to deliver him?

- 11· O my God, provide me with escape from the hand of the wicked one, from the palm of the one acting unjustly and oppressively. (**Psalms 71:4**)

[Question] What did the Psalmist ask Yehowah God to deliver him out of?

- 12· Men, keep on the watch and praying, in order, that you do not come into temptation. The spirit, of course, is eager, but the flesh is weak. (**Mark 14:38**)

[Question] What counsel did Jesus give his disciples to do to avoid temptation?

- 13• And forgive us our sins, for we ourselves also forgive everyone that is in debt to us, and do not bring us into temptation. (Luke 11:4)**

[Question] What must Christians do to gain forgiveness from Yehowah God?

Matthew 6:14• For if you forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you.

- 1• When we come forward to God and ask him to forgive us, we must also be willing to forgive all those who have sinned against us, to gain his forgiveness. If we are unwilling to imitate Yehowah God who grants forgiveness through his own undeserved kindness, then what right do we have to ask him to forgive us?**

[Question] What must Christians do to gain forgiveness for their sins from God, and why is this appropriate?

- 2• But become kind to one another, tenderly compassionate, freely forgiving one another just as God also by Christ freely forgave you. (Ephesians 4:32)**

[Question] What are true Christians encouraged to feel toward one another, following after whose examples?

- 3• Continue putting up with one another and forgiving one another freely if anyone has a cause for complaint against another. Even as Yehowah freely forgave you, so do you also. (Colossians 3:13)**

[Question] How should anointed Christians feel about their brothers, and who should they imitate?

- 4• And Yehowah himself turned back the captive condition of Job when he prayed in behalf of his companions, and Yehowah began to give in addition all that had been Job's, in double amount. (Job 42:10)**

[Question] How did Job respond to Yehowah's request, that he become a priest to his companions who were unmerciful to him?

[Question] What blessing did he receive for doing this?

- 5• Happy are the merciful, since they will be shown mercy. (Matthew 5:7)**

[Question] Why are the merciful to become called happy?

- 6• In like manner my heavenly Father will also deal with you, if you do not forgive each one his brother from your hearts. (Matthew 18:35)**

[Question] How will Yehowah God deal with men who refuse to forgive one another?

- 7• And when you stand praying, forgive whatever you have against anyone, in order, that your Father who is in the heavens may also forgive you your trespasses. (Mark 11:25)**

[Question] Why are Christians encouraged to freely forgive one another?

- 8• Moreover, stop judging, and you will by no means be judged. Stop condemning, and you will by no means be condemned. Keep on releasing, and you will be released. (Luke 6:37)**

[Question] What will be the blessing for stopping doing certain things?

- 9• And forgive us our sins, for we ourselves also forgive everyone that is in debt to us, and do not bring us into temptation. (Luke 11:4)**

[Question] What must we forgive to gain forgiveness ourselves?

Matthew 6:15• Whereas if you do not forgive men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

- 1• Conversely if we are not willing to forgive others their trespasses against us, then neither will Yehowah God forgive us. So then to harbor animosity is to harm oneself irreparably.**

[Question] What can we expect, if we hold grudges and do not forgive others?

- 2• In like manner my heavenly Father will also deal with you, if you do not forgive each one his brother from your hearts. (Matthew 18:35)**

[Question] How will the Father deal with Christians, if they do not forgive others from their hearts?

- 3• For the one that does not practice mercy, will have his judgment without mercy. Mercy exults triumphantly over judgment. (James 2:13)**

[Question] How will the judgment of one not practicing mercy proceed?

[Question] Why then, is mercy triumphant over judgment?

Matthew 6:16

When you are fasting, stop becoming sad-faced like the hypocrites, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear to men to be fasting. Truly I say to you, they are having their reward in full.

1• Jesus counseled them, that when they are fasting to God, that they should not appear sad faced before other men, thus showing others the degree of this suffering and pain for God. This would negate their work, for it would be done for the wrong reasons. They would be fasting not to God, but to men, who they wanted to see how they suffered for their God. Such men would have no reward with God, for they only loved the adulation of other men.

[Question] Who alone needs to know that we are fasting?

[Question] Is there any reward from Yehowah God to men who fast, only so that others will see then fasting?

2• This is what Yehowah of armies has said; The fast of the fourth month, and the fast of the fifth month, and the fast of the seventh month, and the fast of the tenth month will become for the house of Judah an exultation and a rejoicing and good festal seasons. So love truth and peace. (**Zechariah 8:19**)

[Question] What does Yehowah want these fasts to become before him, and what qualities should this bring out in men?

3• As they were publicly ministering to Yehowah and fasting, the Holy Spirit said; Of all persons set Barnabas and Saul apart for me, for the work to which I have called them. (**Acts of Apostles 13:2**)

[Question] What were the men in Antioch doing, when the Holy Spirit set Paul and Barnabus aside for special work?

4• Then they fasted and prayed and laid their hands upon them and let them go. (**Acts of Apostles 13:3**)

[Question] What actions did the men in Antioch then take to send them on their way?

5• Moreover, they appointed older men for them in each congregation and, offering prayer with fastings, they committed them to Yehowah in whom they had become believers. (**Acts of Apostles 14:23**)

[Question] How were older men first appointed in each different congregation?

- 6• **Should the fast that I choose become like this, as a day for earthling man to afflict his soul? For bowing down his head just like a rush, and that he should spread out mere sackcloth and ashes as his couch? Is it this that you call a fast and a day acceptable to Yehowah? (Isaiah 58:5)**

[Question] What did Yehowah God not want fasting to become like?

- 7• **Say to all the people of the land and to the priests; When you fasted and there was a wailing in the fifth month, and in the seventh month, and this for seventy years, did you really fast to me, even me? (Zechariah 7:5)**

[Question] What question did Yehowah God ask Zechariah regarding the Jew's fasting toward him?

- 8• **I fast twice a week, I give the tenth of all things I acquire. (Luke 18:12)**

[Question] What did the Pharisees pride themselves on doing?

- 9• **The one faithless at heart will be satisfied with the results of his own ways, but the good man with the results of his dealings. (Proverbs 14:14)**

[Question] What does the faithless one's heart feel satisfied with?

- 10•• **Also, when you pray, you must not be as the hypocrites, because they like to pray standing in the synagogues and on the corners of the broad ways to be visible to men. Truly I say to you, they are having their reward in full. (Matthew 6:5)**

[Question] Where do the hypocrites like to pray, and why?

Matthew 6:17•• But you, when fasting, grease your head and wash your face.

- 1• **Rather Jesus counseled them, that when fasting, they should tell no one, and make no outward display of their fasting to others. They are after all fasting to God, and not to men, and God is a spirit and will see the suffering that their spirit is undergoing.**

[Question] How did Jesus say that they should fast, and in whose sight?

Matthew 6:18 **That you may appear to be fasting, not to men, but to your Father who is in secrecy. Then your Father who is looking on in secrecy will repay you.**

1• Yehowah God is the only one then, who needs to see how, or know that they are fasting, if they truly are fasting to him. When fasting is properly done, then Yehowah God will repay in secrecy the ones doing so.

[Question] Who is the matter of fasting between, and who will repay one for it?

2• Anyone dwelling in the secret place of the Most High will procure himself lodging under the very shadow of the Almighty One. (Psalms 91:1)

[Question] What will anyone seeking guidance and protection from Yehowah God gain?

Matthew 6:19 **Stop storing up for yourselves treasures upon the earth, where moth and rust consume, and where thieves break in and steal.**

1• Now Jesus Christ counsels his disciples to stop storing up treasures upon the earth, material possessions, whether riches, food, garments, houses, cars, money or gold. Why? Because such treasures inherently fail, they rust out, they get stolen, they are eaten by moths.

[Question] How did Jesus Christ feel about amassing material possessions, and why did he counsel them not to do this?

2• Anointed Christians have a heavenly hope, and none of these material things they gain in this life, will be brought with them to heaven. In fact, the mere dependence upon such things and placing our trust in them, will keep us from attaining to our hope of everlasting life in heaven with God.

[Question] Can any of the material things or the stature of a man, gained here on earth, be brought to heaven later?

[Question] What does one's dependence upon such things, show about him?

3• As for the one sown among the thorns, this is the one hearing the word, but the anxiety of this system of things and the deceptive power of riches choke the word, and he becomes unfruitful. (Matthew 13:22)

[Question] What did the one sown among the thorns, in the parable of the sower, find as his Achilles heel?

- 4• But God said to him; Unreasonable one, this night they are demanding your soul from you. Who, then, is to have the things you stored up? (Luke 12:20)**

[Question] Why was the rich man whose fields produced well considered unreasonable by God?

- 5• Your gold and silver are rusted away, and their rust will be as a witness against you, and will eat your fleshy parts. Something like fire is what you have stored up in the last days. (James 5:3)**

[Question] How did James show that the rust on a Christian's material possessions would serve as a witness against him, and why?

- 6• But they did not listen to Moses. When some men would leave some of it until the morning, it would breed worms and stink. So that Moses became indignant at them. (Exodus 16:20)**

[Question] What would happen over the manna, when the men selfishly gathered too much of it?

- 7• Do not put your trust in defrauding, nor become vain in sheer robbery. In case the means of men+maintenance should thrive, do not set your heart on them. (Psalms 62:10)**

[Question] What does the Bible tell us not to set our hearts upon?

- 8• And those riches have perished because of a calamitous occupation, and he has become father to a son when there is nothing at all in his hand. (Ecclesiastes 5:14)**

[Question] What often happens to material riches, and so why are they not worthy of our trust?

- 9• Your riches have rotted, and your outer garments have become moth-eaten. (James 5:2)**

[Question] What did James state, that rich men would encounter?

- 10• Again I say to you, it is easier for a camel to get through a needle's eye, than for a rich man to get into the kingdom of God. (Matthew 19:24)**

[Question] What did Jesus state, that would be easier for a camel to do, than for a rich man to get into heaven?

- 11• It is easier for a camel to go through a needle's eye, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God. (Mark 10:25)**

[Question] What is easier for a camel to do, than for a rich man to get into heaven?

Matthew 6:20 **Rather, store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust consumes, and where thieves do not break in and steal.**

1 Rather Jesus encourages his disciples to store up treasures in heaven, spiritual treasures. No moth, nor thief, will lessen the value of such treasures, nor will they fade in their glory over time. Really this is a call to put the utmost value upon spiritual things, things which are truly enduring. Do you spend most of your time working for spiritual things, or material things?

[Question] Where then, does Jesus encourage his disciples to store up their treasures, and why there?

2 Jesus said to him; If you want to be perfect, go sell your belongings and give to the poor and you will have treasure in heaven, and come be my follower. **(Matthew 19:21)**

[Question] What did Jesus tell a rich young ruler to do with his material things, to become perfect or complete in God's sight?

3 Jesus looked upon him and felt love for him and said to him; One thing is missing about you; Go, sell what things you have and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven, and come be my follower. **(Mark 10:21)**

[Question] What was missing about this rich young ruler in God's sight?

4 Sell the things belonging to you and give gifts of mercy. Make purses for yourselves that do not wear out, a never-failing treasure in the heavens, where a thief does not get near nor moth consumes. **(Luke 12:33)**

[Question] What did Jesus counsel his followers to do with their material wealth, on becoming Christians?

[Question] Where then, would they have purses, and what would be placed within them?

5 After hearing that, Jesus said to him; There is yet one thing lacking about you. Sell all the things you have and distribute to poor people, and you will have treasure in the heavens, and come be my follower. **(Luke 18:22)**

[Question] What did Jesus invite a rich young man to do, before he could become his follower?

6 To an incorruptible and undefiled and unfading inheritance. It

is reserved in the heavens for you. (**1 Peter 1:4**)

[Question] What kind of an inheritance is reserved in heaven for anointed Christians?

- 7• If a thief should be found in the act of breaking in, and he does get struck and die, there is no bloodguilt for him. (**Exodus 22:2**)

[Question] What risk do thieves take when stealing?

- 8• Do remember me, O my God, concerning this, and do not wipe out my acts of loving-kindness that I have performed in connection with the house of my God, and the guardianship of it. (**Nehemiah 13:14**)

[Question] How did Nehemiah pray for remembrance before his God, and for what reasons?

- 9• So it goes with the man, that lays up treasure for himself, but is not rich toward God. (**Luke 12:21**)

[Question] What course is considered unreasonable by Yehowah God?

- 10• Safely treasuring up for themselves a fine foundation for the future, in order, that they may get a firm hold on the real life. (**1 Timothy 6:19**)

[Question] What kind of a foundation are those storing up spiritual treasures building upon, to what end?

- 11• For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also. (**Matthew 6:21**)

[Question] Where will a man's heart truly rest?

- 12• For where your treasure is, there your hearts will be also. (**Luke 12:34**)

[Question] How is the heart influenced, by what we decide to treasure in life?

Matthew 6:21•• For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

- 1• What men think is the most valuable to them is where their hearts are truly dwelling. Do you place primary value on the obtaining of spiritual things, or of material things?

[Question] Where are the hearts of fallen mankind truly resting?

[Question] What question should we all ask of ourselves in our Christian service?

- 2• As for the one sown among the thorns, this is the one hearing the word, but the anxiety of this system of things and the deceptive power of riches, choke the word, and he becomes unfruitful. (**Matthew 13:22**)

[Question] What chokes off the productivity of Christians within this system of things?

- 3• For where your treasure is, there your hearts will be also. (**Luke 12:34**)

[Question] Where will a man's heart rest?

Matthew 6:22•• The lamp of the body is the eye. If, then, your eye is simple,¹ your whole body will be bright.

Footnote: Or, sincere; all one way; in focus; generous

- 1• Jesus now draws an illustration, that the lamp or light of the body is the eye. Now by eye, he means that what we see of value in our lives, is where we willingly focus our attention. If our eye or focus in life is simple, then our whole body will be bright, or enlightened by the goodness of the way we live.

[Question] What did Jesus say that the eye was like to the body, and what did he mean by this?

[Question] What kind of focus in life did Jesus then encourage his disciples to have?

- 2• Did he not state, that to love God and our fellowman was the whole obligation of the Law? For anointed Christians keeping a simple focus upon our hope ahead, is a sure way to brighten our entire life.

[Question] What did Jesus state, was the whole obligation of the Law Covenant?

[Question] What should an anointed Christian's focus be upon?

- 3• As for your eyes, straight ahead they should look, yes, your own beaming eyes should gaze straight in front of you. (**Proverbs 4:25**)

[Question] Where does the Bible encourage us to focus?

- 4• The lamp of the body is your eye. When your eye is simple, your whole body is also bright, but when it is wicked, your body is also dark. (**Luke 11:34**)

[Question] What is the lamp of the body?

[Question] If our aspirations are simple, then what will our life be like?

- 5• The eyes of your heart having been enlightened, that you may know what is the hope to which he called you, what the glorious riches are, which he holds as an inheritance for the holy ones. (**Ephesians 1:18**)

[Question] What did Paul want anointed Christians to have enlightened within them, based upon what?

- 6• The orders from Yehowah are upright, causing the heart to rejoice, the commandment of Yehowah is clean, making the eyes shine. (**Psalms 19:8**)

[Question] How does obedience to righteous commands of God do for men who follow them?

Matthew 6:23• But if your eye is wicked,¹ your whole body will be dark. If in reality the light that is in you is darkness, how great that darkness is!

Footnote: Or, bad; envious

- 1• Jesus then enlarges upon his thinking, for if our eye is wicked, then it will affect all of our life. If the light, the motivation we have within us, is to do bad and wicked things, then how great the darkness in which we are living, for there is no real hope for a fine future ahead.

[Question] What will happen then, if our eye is wicked, not simple?

[Question] What will the life of a man seeking to do wicked things be like?

- 2• But I say to you that everyone that keeps on looking at a woman so as to have a passion for her, has already committed adultery with her in his heart. (**Matthew 5:28**)

[Question] What is wrong with the heart of any man, who looks after a woman, so as to have passions rise within him for her?

- 3• Is it not lawful for me to do what I want with my own things? Or is your eye wicked because I am good? (**Matthew 20:15**)

[Question] How did the vineyard owner address the slaves, who came forth early in the day?

- 4• Adulteries, covetings, acts of wickedness, deceit, loose conduct, an envious eye, blasphemy, haughtiness, unreasonableness. (**Mark 7:22**)

[Question] What kinds of things, do the wicked one's hearts dwell or focus upon?

- 5• They have eyes full of adultery and unable to desist from sin, and they entice unsteady souls. They have a heart trained in covetousness. They are accursed children. (2 Peter 2:14)

[Question] What also do the wicked ones dwell upon, and practice?

- 6• But if anyone walks in the night, he bumps against something, because the light is not in him. (John 11:10)

[Question] How did Jesus illustrate, how the wicked ones go through life?

- 7• A man of envious eye is bestirring himself after valuable things, but he does not know, that want itself will come upon him. (Proverbs 28:22)

[Question] What does the wicked man exert all his energies to attain, yet how will he end up?

- 8• Be alert, therefore **spiritually**. Perhaps the light that is in you is darkness. (Luke 11:35)

[Question] Why should anointed Christians be spiritually alert?

Matthew 6:24•• No one can slave for two masters. For either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will stick to the one and despise the other. You cannot slave for God and for Riches.¹

Footnote: Or, Mammon Greek, *ma-mo-nai'*, dative; J17, 18, 22(Hebrew), *ham-ma-mohn'*, the mammon

- 1• Jesus now shows, that no one can slave for two different masters. They would have competing desires and the slave trying to serve both of them would be torn in different directions always. Is this just general counsel though?

[Question] What did Jesus then show, that no slave can do?

- 2• Certainly not, for now Jesus makes application, showing that we cannot slave for Yehowah God, and at the same time be trying to gain material wealth or riches. These two things are in direct opposition to one another. Every man who wants to serve God, needs to resolve this conflict in his heart, and to know, who his master is.

[Question] Is this just general counsel though?

[Question] What two masters is it impossible for a man to serve simultaneously, and why?

- 3• No house servant can be a slave to two masters. For, either

he will hate the one and love the other, or he will stick to the one and despise the other. You cannot be slaves to God, and to riches. (Luke 16:13)

[Question] What did Jesus show are opposing masters, and can men serve both of them?

- 4• Do you not know, that if you keep presenting yourselves to anyone as slaves to obey him, you are slaves of him, because you obey him, either of sin with death in view, or of obedience with righteousness in view? (Romans 6:16)**

[Question] What do we become to anyone we present ourselves to serve?

[Question] What choices for service then, are before all men in this world?

- 5• Adulteresses, do you not know that the friendship with the world is enmity with God? Whoever, therefore, wants to be a friend of the world is constituting himself an enemy of God. (James 4:4)**

[Question] What does being a friend of the world constitute one as before God?

[Question] What does a man make of himself, if he befriends the world?

- 6• As for the one sown among the thorns, this is the one hearing the word, but the anxiety of this system of things and the deceptive power of riches choke the word, and he becomes unfruitful. (Matthew 13:22)**

[Question] How are so many false Christians, like seed sown among the thorns?

- 7• Also, I say to you, make friends for yourselves by means of the unrighteous riches, so that, when such fail, they may receive you into the everlasting dwelling places. (Luke 16:9)**

[Question] How should anointed Christians use their material things, and why should they not depend upon them, like others do?

- 8• Do not put your trust in defrauding, nor become vain in sheer robbery. In case the means of maintenance should thrive, do not set your heart on them. (Psalms 62:10)**

[Question] What things should Christians not set their hearts upon, and why?

- 9• A mere lover of silver will not be satisfied with silver, neither**

any lover of wealth with income. This too is vanity.
(**Ecclesiastes 5:10**)

[Question] What are persons who trust in money never satisfied with?

- 10• And they will come in to you, like the coming in of people, and sit before you as my people. They will certainly hear your words, but these they will not do, for with their mouth they are expressing lustful desires, and after their unjust gain is where their heart is going. (**Ezekiel 33:31**)

[Question] What was the Son Of Man told, that people would do regarding his words, but what were their hearts going after?

- 11• And those who are bowing down upon the roofs to the army of the heavens, and those who are bowing down, making sworn oaths to Yehowah and making sworn oaths by Malcam. (**Zephaniah 1:5**)

[Question] What kind of division of loyalties, is unacceptable to Yehowah God, who is a jealous God?

- 12• But they all in common started to beg off. The first said to him, I bought a field and need to go out and see it. I ask you; Have me excused. (**Luke 14:18**)

[Question] How did the invited guests all beg off, and what did they put ahead of honoring their host?

- 13• For the love of money is a root of all sorts of injurious things, and by reaching out for this love, some have been led astray from the faith, and have stabbed themselves all over with many pains. (**1 Timothy 6:10**)

[Question] What is the love of money the root of, and what has it caused people to do to themselves and others?

- 14• Do not be loving either the world or the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him. (**1 John 2:15**)

[Question] What are anointed Christians told not to be loving?

[Question] If anyone loves the world, then, what love is not in him?

Matthew 6:25• On this account I say to you. Stop being anxious about your souls as to what you will eat or what you will drink, or about your bodies as to what you will wear. Does not the soul¹ mean more than food, and the body than clothing?

Footnote: Or, lives Literally, soul Greek, *psy·kheí'*, singular See Appendix 4A

1• Jesus then shows, that being anxious about material needs is futile and frustrating. Yehowah God knows that his servants need certain things to live, and our lives are certainly more important than these material things, like food and clothing.

[Question] What did Jesus then have to say about being anxious about material things?

[Question] What does Yehowah God surely know about each one of us?

2• What really makes men anxious over these things, is that they want far more than God is willing to supply, but storing up mountains of material supplies and wealth, is simply not God's way. His way for man, is one of faithful and loyal dependence upon him.

[Question] Why then, are most men continually anxious over such material things?

[Question] How is God true way directly opposed to amassing wealth?

3• Then he said to his disciples; On this account I say to you, quit being anxious about your souls as to what you will eat, or about your bodies as to what you will wear. (Luke 12:22)

[Question] What counsel did Jesus give his disciples about food and clothing, the necessities of life?

4• Do not be anxious over anything, but in everything by prayer and supplication along with thanksgiving, let your petitions be made known to God. (Philippians 4:6)

[Question] How should anointed Christians deal with their concerns over material things?

5• Throw your burden upon Yehowah himself, and he himself will sustain you. Never will he allow the righteous one to totter. (Psalms 55:22)

[Question] What assurance does Yehowah God give to those trusting in him?

6• So, having sustenance and covering, we shall be content with these things. (1 Timothy 6:8)

[Question] What things should make us content?

[Question] Does the world today live by this fine counsel?

7• Let your manner of life be free of the love of money, while you are content with the present things. For he has said; I will by no means leave you, nor by any means forsake you.

(Hebrews 13:5)

[Question] What should our manner of life be completely free of, for what has Yehowah God promised?

- 8• While you throw all your anxiety upon him, because he cares for you. (1 Peter 5:7)**

[Question] Where should we place all of our anxiety upon, and why?

- 9• For the soul is worth more than food, and the body than clothing. (Luke 12:23)**

[Question] What is worth more to God than food and clothing?

- 10• But in case you should say; What are we going to eat in the seventh year, seeing that we may not sow seed or gather our crops? (Leviticus 25:20)**

[Question] What concern did Yehowah God tell the Israelites not to worry about?

[Question] How was keeping the Sabbath in the seventh year, a test of faith?

- 11• What is mortal man that you keep him in mind, and the son of earthling man, that you take care of him? (Psalms 8:4)**

[Question] How should men view themselves before this Almighty God?

- 12• Anxious care in the heart of a man, is what will cause it to bow down, but the good word, is what makes it rejoice. (Proverbs 12:25)**

[Question] What will make the heart of a man bow down?

- 13• Sweet is the sleep of the one serving, regardless of whether it is little or much that he eats. But the plenty belonging to the rich one is not permitting him to sleep. (Ecclesiastes 5:12)**

[Question] How does the one who does God's will sleep, regardless of whether he eats a lot or a little?

[Question] What though, prevents the rich man from sleeping well?

- 14• But the anxieties of this system of things and the deceptive power of riches and the desires for the rest of the things make inroads and choke the word, and it becomes unfruitful. (Mark 4:19)**

[Question] What chokes the word among seeds sown among the thorns of this wicked system of things?

- 15• But pay attention to yourselves that your hearts never become weighed down with overeating and heavy drinking and anxieties of life, and suddenly that day be instantly upon you. (Luke 21:34)**

[Question] What did Jesus warn his disciples to never become weighed down by during these Last Days, and why?

Matthew 6:26•• Observe intently the birds of heaven, because they do not sow seed or reap or gather into storehouses, still your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not worth more than they are?

- 1• Jesus then shows us an example of how God's system of things works, it is to be like the situation with the birds of the heavens. They have no place to store up food, like barns or pantries, still they never go without food. Jesus then pointedly asks; Are humans not worth far more to God than little birds? What do you think?**

[Question] What is God's way like, and how did Jesus Christ illustrate this with small birds?

[Question] How did Jesus then drive home his point of counsel to men?

- 2• Who prepares for the raven its food when its own young ones cry to God for help, when they keep wandering about because there is nothing to eat? (Job 38:41)**

[Question] How did Job show, that God cares for the young of birds and other animals?

- 3• To the beasts he is giving their food, to the young ravens that keep calling. (Psalms 147:9)**

[Question] Do any of the other animals, other than man, work for each other to obtain food?

- 4• Do not two sparrows sell for a coin of small value? Yet not one of them will fall to the ground without your Father's knowledge. (Matthew 10:29)**

[Question] How conscious of the needs of all living things is Yehowah God, and how did Jesus Christ show this loving concern of God's?

- 5• Mark well that the ravens neither sow seed nor reap, and they have neither barn nor storehouse, and yet, God feeds them. Of how much more worth are you, than birds? (Luke 12:24)**

[Question] What do birds inherently lack, yet have you personally ever seen one starve?

- 6• For you are a holy people to Yehowah your God. It is you Yehowah your God has chosen to become his people, a special property, out of all the peoples that are on the surface of the ground. (Deuteronomy 7:6)**

[Question] What must servants of Yehowah God become among all other peoples of the earth?

- 7• And to every wild beast of the earth and to every flying creature of the heavens and to everything moving upon the earth in which there is life as a soul I have given all green vegetation for food. And it came to be so. (Genesis 1:30)**

[Question] What food supplies did Yehowah God give to all the animal kinds to serve as food for them?

- 8• All of them, for you they keep waiting to give them their food in its season. (Psalms 104:27)**

[Question] Who do the other animals on this planet all depend upon for food in due season, yet man seemingly cannot?

- 9• Like the swift, the bulbul, so I keep chirping. I keep cooing like the dove. My eyes have looked languishingly to the height. O Yehowah, I am under oppression. Stand good for me. (Isaiah 38:14)**

[Question] How did Isaiah describe his own concerns before God, when under oppression?

- 10• Therefore have no fear. You are worth more than many sparrows. (Matthew 10:31)**

[Question] What are men in relation to a small bird, are they more important to God?

Matthew 6:27• Who of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his life span?

- 1• Will anxious concern make us live any longer? Certainly not! Today doctors have clearly shown the wisdom of these words, for a calm heart is what lengthens our life, and an anxious person does not have one.**

[Question] Will worry ever make anyone live longer?

[Question] What can anxiety actually lead to, regarding lifespan?

- 2• **Look! You have made my days just a few, and my life's duration is as nothing in front of you. Surely, every earthing man, though standing firm, is nothing but an exhalation. (Psalms 39:5)**

[Question] What is the current lifespan of men, when compared to the ever-living God Yehowah?

- 3• **Who of you by being anxious can add a cubit to his life span? (Luke 12:25)**

[Question] Will worry about life extend our lifespans?

Matthew 6:28•• Also, on the matter of clothing, why are you anxious? Take a lesson from the lilies of the field, how they are growing, they do not toil, nor do they spin.

- 1• **Jesus now also takes another illustration, the lilies of the field, which are quite beautiful. They grow uncultivated in many areas, and yet look at how beautifully they are clothed. Will not God see to it that men, who need clothing, are likewise cared for?**

[Question] How does Jesus now illustrate how God clothes mere vegetation, and how does this relate to our own need to be clothed?

- 2• **Mark well how the lilies grow. They neither toil nor spin, but I tell you, not even Solomon in all his glory was arrayed as one of these. (Luke 12:27)**

[Question] Who, despite his great wealth was not arrayed any more beautifully than a lily?

Matthew 6:29•• But I say to you that not even Solomon in all his glory was arrayed as one of these.

- 1• **Jesus now shows, that even wealthy King Solomon never was dressed out any more regally, than is a lily.**

[Question] What comparison does Jesus now make to Solomon's dress and the common lily of the valley?

- 2• **And the food of his table and the sitting of his servants and the table service of his waiters and their attire and his drinks and his burnt sacrifices that he regularly offered up at the house of Yehowah, then there proved to be no more spirit in her. (1 Kings 10:5)**

[Question] What did the Queen of Sheba notice, when dining with Solomon?

- 3• **And Solomon the son of David continued to get strength in his kingship, and Yehowah his God was with him and kept making him surpassingly great. (2 Chronicles 1:1)**

[Question] How did Solomon come to fare, among all the kings of his day, and even today?

- 4• **And they were bringing each his gift, articles of silver and articles of gold and garments, armor and balsam oil, horses and mules as a yearly matter of course. (2 Chronicles 9:24)**

[Question] What was given to him yearly as a matter of course?

- 5• **Mark well how the lilies grow. They neither toil nor spin. But I tell you, not even Solomon in all his glory was arrayed as one of these. (Luke 12:27)**

[Question] Do lilies have to work to earn their beautiful covering?

Matthew 6:30•• **If, now, God thus clothes the vegetation of the field, which is here today and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, will he not much rather clothe you, you with little faith?**

- 1• **Jesus now draws home his point, that if such things which are far more temporary than men are, things which end up in an oven to be later eaten by men, are so well clothed, will God not clothe men themselves? Really to think otherwise is a lack of faith in him.**

[Question] How then, does Jesus reason with men about how the lilies are clothed?

- 2• **But he said to them; Why are you fainthearted, you with little faith? Then, getting up, he rebuked the winds and the sea, and a great calm set in. (Matthew 8:26)**

[Question] How did Jesus show, that men generally have very little faith?

- 3• **Immediately stretching out his hand Jesus caught hold of him and said to him; You with little faith, why did you give way to doubt? (Matthew 14:31)**

[Question] How did Jesus chastise Peter for letting his little faith falter momentarily?

- 4• **Knowing this, Jesus said; Why are you doing this reasoning among yourselves, because you have no loaves, you with little faith? (Matthew 16:8)**

[Question] How did Jesus show, that he was not concerned with not having loaves to eat, to his disciples?

- 5• If, now, God thus clothes the vegetation in the field that today exists and tomorrow is cast into an oven, how much rather will he clothe you, you with little faith! (**Luke 12:28**)

[Question] What reasonable statement did Jesus make, showing that God will see to it, that we have proper clothing?

[Question] However are most people satisfied, with what God provides?

- 6• And Jacob went on to vow a vow, saying; If God will continue with me, and will certainly keep me on this way on which I am going, and will certainly give me bread to eat and garments to wear. (**Genesis 28:20**)

[Question] What vow did Jacob make, between himself and his God?

- 7• What is mortal man that you keep him in mind, and the son of earthling man, that you take care of him? (**Psalms 8:4**)

[Question] How did the Psalmist humbly show the true relationship of man to his God?

Matthew 6:31•• **So never be anxious and say; What are we to eat? Or; What are we to drink? Or; What are we to put on?**

- 1• Jesus then shows, that there is no need to be anxious about food or clothing or drink. Yehowah God knows we need all these things and he will provide them to us.

[Question] What things then, do Christians not even need to be anxious about, and why?

- 2• In answer the Lord said to her; Martha, Martha, you are anxious and disturbed about many things. (**Luke 10:41**)

[Question] What was Martha anxious about, when Jesus came to visit her household?

- 3• So quit seeking what you might eat and what you might drink, and quit being in anxious suspense. (**Luke 12:29**)

[Question] What should men stop being in anxious suspense over, for who is actually watching over their daily lives?

- 4• While I kept guiding you forty years in the wilderness, your garments did not wear out upon you, and your sandal did not wear out upon your foot. (**Deuteronomy 29:5**)

[Question] What happened to the clothes and sandals of the Israelites in the wilderness for some forty years?

Matthew 6:32 **For all these are the things the nations are eagerly pursuing. For your heavenly Father knows you need all these things.**

1 Jesus now contrasts the way that anointed Christians should feel, to the ways of the world they are living within. The world worries about all these things daily, and thinks of little more than acquiring lots of them. This way, they view as a way to a secure future. Yet Yehowah God knows his anointed Christian sons need all these things daily, and all should look to him to provide them for them.

[Question] What things does the world constantly worry over, and how should Christians be different?

2 For all these are the things the nations of the world are eagerly pursuing, but your Father knows you need these things. (**Luke 12:30**)

[Question] What does Yehowah God know that his servants need daily?

Matthew 6:33 **Keep on, then, seeking¹ first the kingdom and his righteousness, and all these other things will be added to you.**

Footnote: Or, Be you seeking Greek, *ze-tei'te*; the verb form indicates continuous action

1 What then, will insure to anointed Christians that they will always have enough to eat and wear in their service to Yehowah God. They should put first in their lives the seeking of his righteousness and his Kingdom, wherein this kind of righteousness will dwell among all men. Men doing so, will find, that all the things that they really need will be added to them, they will lack nothing good that they need.

[Question] What do anointed Christians need to put first in their lives to have God's assistance in everything?

2 For in it, God's righteousness is being revealed, by reason of faith, and toward faith, just as it is written: But the righteous one, by means of faith he will live. (**Romans 1:17**)

[Question] How then, will the righteous one continue living?

3 For the kingdom of God does not mean eating and drinking,

but means righteousness and peace and joy with Holy Spirit. (Romans 14:17)

[Question] What does the kindness of God not mean?

[Question] What truly does it mean, or what is it about?

- 4· A young man I used to be, I have also grown old, and yet I have not seen anyone righteous left entirely, nor his offspring looking for bread. (Psalms 37:25)**

[Question] What did King David confess about his own experience in life?

- 5· And Yehowah your God will indeed make you have more than enough in every work of your hand, in the fruit of your belly and the fruit of your domestic animals and the fruitage of your soil, resulting in prosperity, because Yehowah will again exult over you for good, just as he exulted over your forefathers. (Deuteronomy 30:9)**

[Question] How does Yehowah God deal with those who serve him, and who are generous and giving like he is?

- 6· And also what you have not requested I will give you, both riches and glory, so that there will not have happened to be any among the kings like you, all your days. (1 Kings 3:13)**

[Question] What did Yehowah God promise to give to Solomon, because he asked God for wisdom, and not for riches?

- 7· Yehowah is my Shepherd. I shall lack nothing. (Psalms 23:1)**

[Question] Who did King David consider his shepherd in life?

- 8· Roll upon Yehowah your way, and rely upon him, and he himself will act. (Psalms 37:5)**

[Question] What should Christians roll upon Yehowah God?

- 9· Food he has given to those fearing him. To time indefinite he will remember his covenant. (Psalms 111:5)**

[Question] What does Yehowah give to those fearing him?

- 10· Valuable things and riches are in his house, and his righteousness is standing forever. (Psalms 112:3)**

[Question] What things are in the house of the righteous one?

- 11· Yehowah will not cause the soul of the righteous one to go hungry, but the craving of the wicked ones he will push away. (Proverbs 10:3)**

[Question] What craving will Yehowah God fill, and what craving will he push away?

- 12· Roll your works upon Yehowah himself, and your plans will be firmly established. (**Proverbs 16:3**)

[Question] How can a man firmly establish his plans?

- 13· Listen to me, you people who are pursuing after righteousness, you who are seeking to find Yehowah. Look to the rock from which you were hewn out, and to the hollow of the pit from which you were dug out. (**Isaiah 51:1**)

[Question] Whom should people pursuing after righteousness keep looking to?

- 14· Seek Yehowah, all you meek ones of the earth, who have practiced His own judicial decision. Seek righteousness, seek meekness. Probably, you may be concealed in the day of Yehowah's anger. (**Zephaniah 2:3**)

[Question] Who do the meek ones of the earth keep seeking, for what have they practiced?

[Question] What assurance do they then get from Yehowah God?

- 15· Is there as yet the seed in the grain pit? And as yet, the vine and the fig tree and the pomegranate tree and the olive tree, it has not borne, has it? From this day, I shall bestow blessing. (**Haggai 2:19**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God tell the exiles returning to Jerusalem, if they would put his work first in their lives?

- 16· Let your kingdom come. Let your will take place, as in heaven, also upon earth. (**Matthew 6:10**)

[Question] Whose will and Kingdom, should Christians look to always for relief from the present troubles of life?

[Question] Should political activism be any part of a true Christian's life?

- 17· So they brought the boats back to land, and abandoned everything and followed him. (**Luke 5:11**)

[Question] How did Jesus' disciples react to the invitation to become his disciples?

- 18· A few things, though, are needed, or just one. For her part, Mary chose the good portion, and it will not be taken away from her. (**Luke 10:42**)

[Question] Why did Jesus refuse to chastise Mary, who listened attentively to his teachings?

- 19· Nevertheless, seek continually his kingdom, and these things will be added to you. (Luke 12:31)**

[Question] What things will be added to anointed Christians, who seek continually the Kingdom of God?

- 20· If, however, you were raised up with the Christ, go on seeking the things above, where the Christ is seated at the right hand of God. (Colossians 3:1)**

[Question] What things should the minds of anointed Christians be focused upon, and their everlasting hope?

- 21· For bodily training is beneficial for a little, but godly devotion is beneficial for all things, as it holds promise of the life now and that which is to come. (1 Timothy 4:8)**

[Question] What is bodily training beneficial for, and why is spiritual training better?

- 22· Give orders to those who are rich in the present system of things not to be high-minded, and to rest their hope, not on uncertain riches, but on God, who furnishes us all things richly for our enjoyment. (1 Timothy 6:17)**

[Question] What should those who become Christians, but who are rich, rest their hopes upon, and why?

- 23· Moreover, without faith it is impossible to please him well, for he that approaches God must believe that he is, and that he becomes, the rewarder of those earnestly seeking him. (Hebrews 11:6)**

[Question] What is absolutely necessary to please God well?

[Question] What must we believe that God is, in relation to us?

- 24· But there are new heavens and a new earth that we are awaiting according to his promise, and in these righteousness is to dwell. (2 Peter 3:13)**

[Question] What are true Christians awaiting according to Yehovah God's promise, and what will dwell there?

Matthew 6:34· So, never be anxious about the next day, for the next day will have its own anxieties. Sufficient for each day is its own badness.

1• So Jesus Christ counseled his disciples to take life one day at a time, for Yehowah God is in control of all things. Each day will have enough to worry about within it, so that we need not take a long term look at life, but to be dependent on him always and in all things.

[Question] How should anointed Christians take life?

[Question] Whom should anointed Christians be dependent upon every day?

2• Then Yehowah said to Moses; Here I am raining down bread for you from the heavens, and the people must go out and pick up each his amount day for day, in order, that I may put them to the test as to whether they will walk in my Law, or not. (Exodus 16:4)

[Question] How did Yehowah God put the Israelites to the test through the giving of the manna daily?

3• Then Moses said to them; Let nobody leave any of it until the morning. (Exodus 16:19)

[Question] What were they told to do with the manna each day?

4• Strength and splendor are her clothing, and she laughs at a future day. (Proverbs 31:25)

[Question] How does the capable wife view the future?

5• Give us today our bread for this day. (Matthew 6:11)

[Question] What should we ask for from Yehowah God daily, and then be satisfied with?

6• If, therefore, you cannot do the least thing, why be anxious about the remaining things? (Luke 12:26)

[Question] If we cannot change our circumstances, then does it do any good to worry?

Matthew Chapter 7

Matthew 7:1 **Stop judging that you may not be judged.**

1• Jesus next shows, that being judgmental of others will cause us to come into judgment ourselves. If we want to escape judgment then we should not become judges of others, either of their motives or their actions.

[Question] What will adopting a judgmental attitude toward others, cause us to experience?

[Question] So then, how can we avoid being judged?

2• Moreover, stop judging, and you will by no means be judged. Stop condemning, and you will by no means be condemned. Keep on releasing, and you will be released. (**Luke 6:37**)

[Question] What things did Jesus tell us to stop doing, and why?

3• Therefore you are inexcusable, O man, whoever you are, if you judge. For in the thing in which you judge another, you condemn yourself, inasmuch as you that judge practice the same things. (**Romans 2:1**)

[Question] What is considered inexcusable conduct, if we judge another man as wrong, to do something or other?

4• Therefore let us not be judging one another any longer, but rather make this your decision, not to put before a brother a stumbling block or a cause for tripping. (**Romans 14:13**)

[Question] Why then, does it make sense not to be judgmental of others?

[Question] What then, should be a Christian's resolve?

5• Hence do not judge anything before the due time, until the Lord comes, who will both bring the secret things of darkness to light and make the counsels of the hearts manifest, and then each one will have his praise come to him from God. (**1 Corinthians 4:5**)

[Question] What will come to light when the Lord Jesus comes in judgment, and then, what can each one expect for his own actions?

6• And Eliab his oldest brother got to hear as he spoke to the men, and Eliab's anger grew hot against David, so that he said; Why is it that you have come down? And in whose charge did you leave those few sheep behind in the

wilderness? I myself well know your presumptuousness and the badness of your heart, because you have come down for the purpose of seeing the battle. (1 Samuel 17:28)

[Question] How did David's own brother Eliab misjudge David's motives in coming to the battlefield?

- 7• Be frightened for yourselves because of a sword, for the sword means a raging against errors, in order, that you men may know there is a judge. (Job 19:29)

[Question] Why did Yehowah God repeatedly bring the sword against his people?

- 8• Who are you to judge the house servant of another? To his own master he stands or falls. Indeed, he will be made to stand, for Yehowah can make him stand. (Romans 14:4)

[Question] Before whom, does a house servant stand or fall?

[Question] Are any of our Christian brothers serving us, or who is their master?

- 9• Quit speaking against one another, brothers. He who speaks against a brother or judges his brother speaks against Law and judges Law. Now if you judge Law, you are, not a doer of Law, but a judge. (James 4:11)

[Question] When we speak against others, what are we also becoming?

[Question] Are not all men doers of Law, and not judges of Law?

Matthew 7:2• For with what judgment you are judging, you will be judged, and with the measure that you are measuring out, they will measure out to you.

- 1• Just as we have judged others, that is the way that we each will be judged. If we are compassionate and forgiving and merciful, then that is the way we will eventually be judged. If we are exacting and firm and rigid in our expectations of others, then that too, is how we will be judged. With the measure, we are measuring out, it will be measured out to us.

[Question] How then, will each individual Christian be judged?

[Question] What then, will happen to us if we are rigid and exacting of others, and judge them harshly?

- 2• With that his master, provoked to wrath, delivered him to the jailers, until he should pay back all that was owing.

(Matthew 18:34)

[Question] How did the master of the unfaithful steward treat the slave who acted unmercifully, after receiving mercy himself?

- 3• For the one that does not practice mercy will have his judgment without mercy. Mercy exults triumphantly over judgment. (James 2:13)**

[Question] What will be the judgment of men who fail to practice mercy?

[Question] What exults over judgment?

- 4• He further said to them; Pay attention to what you are hearing. With the measure that you are measuring out, you will have it measured out to you, yes, you will have more added to you. (Mark 4:24)**

[Question] What measure will be returned to every man?

- 5• Practice giving, and people will give to you. They will pour into your laps a fine measure, pressed down, shaken together and overflowing. For with the measure that you are measuring out, they will measure out to you in return. (Luke 6:38)**

[Question] What should we practice, and then what way will people treat us?

- 6• Do not be misled! God is not one to be mocked. For whatever a man is sowing, this he will also reap. (Galatians 6:7)**

[Question] What should we not allow ourselves to be misled by, for how will God in fact judge us all?

- 7• And they began to say one to the other; Unquestionably we are guilty with regard to our brother, because we saw the distress of his soul when he implored compassion on our part, but we did not listen. That is why this distress has come upon us. (Genesis 42:21)**

[Question] How did Joseph's brothers come to feel years later, when they realized what they had done to their brother?

[Question] How did Joseph, though oppressed, come out the winner under God's direction?

- 8• Branding for branding, wound for wound, blow for blow. (Exodus 21:25)**

[Question] What did the Law Covenant state, was to be done to one causing harm to another?

- 9• Then God let develop a bad spirit between Abimelech and the landowners of Shechem, and the landowners of Shechem proceeded to deal treacherously with Abimelech. (**Judges 9:23**)

[Question] What was returned to Abimelech for his bad treatment of others?

- 10• However, Samuel said; Just as your sword has bereaved women of children, in that way your mother will be most bereaved of children among women. With that Samuel went hacking Agag to pieces before Yehowah in Gilgal. (**1 Samuel 15:33**)

[Question] How was Agag treated for his wicked treatment of others?

- 11• And, look! Just as your soul was great this day in my eyes, so may my soul be great in the eyes of Yehowah, that he may deliver me out of all distress. (**1 Samuel 26:24**)

[Question] How did King David return better to Saul, than he received from Saul?

- 12• At this they said to the king; The man that exterminated us, and that schemed to annihilate us from subsisting in any of the territory of Israel. (**2 Samuel 21:5**)

[Question] How was the wicked treatment of the men of Gibeon returned upon Saul's offspring?

- 13• And you must speak to him, saying; This is what Yehowah has said; Have you murdered and also taken possession? And you must speak to him, saying; This is what Yehowah has said; In the place where the dogs licked up the blood of Naboth, the dogs will lick up your blood, even yours. (**1 Kings 21:19**)

[Question] How did Ahab fare, over the wicked treatment he and his wife gave to Naboth?

- 14• And he will certainly bring forth your righteousness as the light itself, and your justice as the midday. (**Psalms 37:6**)

[Question] How will Yehowah God bless the righteous and upright ones among mankind?

- 15• Woe to you who are despoiling, without you yourself being despoiled, and to you who are dealing treacherously, without others having dealt treacherously with you! As soon as you have finished as a despoiler, you will be

despoiled. As soon as you have done with dealing treacherously, they will deal treacherously with you. (Isaiah 33:1)

[Question] Who did Isaiah show, that only woe would come forth upon?

- 16• The king himself will go into mourning, even a chieftain will clothe himself with desolation, and the very hands of the people of the land will get disturbed. According to their way I shall act toward them, and with their judgments I shall judge them, and they will have to know that I am Yehowah. (Ezekiel 7:27)**

[Question] How did Yehowah God promise to judge his people from the chieftain on down the line?

- 17• Therefore as I am alive, is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Yehowah, I will act also according to your anger and according to your jealousy that you have expressed owing to your feelings of hatred toward them. I will make myself known among them when I judge you. (Ezekiel 35:11)**

[Question] How did Yehowah God feel against the people of Edom who delighted in the demise of Israel?

- 18• And they will not carry sticks of wood from the field, nor will they gather firewood out of the forests, for with the armor they will light fires. And they will certainly make spoil of those, who had been making spoil of them, and plunder those, who had been plundering them, is the utterance of the Sovereign Lord Yehowah. (Ezekiel 39:10)**

[Question] What does Yehowah promise he will give the spoils of his defeat of Gog of Magog to, and why?

- 19• For the day of Yehowah against all the nations is near. In the way that you have done, it will be done to you. Your sort of treatment will return upon your own head. (Obadiah 1:15)**

[Question] How does Yehowah God promise to return their own treatment upon the nations of the earth?

Matthew 7:3•• Why, then, do you look at the straw in your brother's eye, but do not consider the rafter in your own eye?

1• Jesus now asks, just why a man wants to focus upon the flaws of others, while not being able to see through his own faults?

[Question] How does Jesus now illustrate, how we all tend to focus upon the flaws within others, rather than those within ourselves?

2• Why, then, do you look at the straw that is in your brother's eye, but do not observe the rafter that is in your own eye? (Luke 6:41)

[Question] What do we tend to see looming before us, while paying no attention to something more ominous within?

Matthew 7:4•• Or how can you say to your brother; Allow me to extract the straw from your eye, when, look! A rafter is in your own eye?

1• What business does a man have in trying to fix someone else's problems, when he has not fixed his own?

[Question] Does a man have any business giving counsel, when he cannot fix his own faults?

2• How can you say to your brother; Brother, allow me to extract the straw that is in your eye, while you yourself are not looking at the rafter in that eye of yours? Hypocrite! First extract the rafter from your own eye, and then you will see clearly how to extract the straw that is in your brother's eye. (Luke 6:42)

[Question] What is it hypocritical for us to do, if we have not first fixed our own problems?

Matthew 7:5•• Hypocrite! First extract the rafter from your own eye, and then you will see clearly how to extract the straw from your brother's eye.

1• Such a person is a hypocrite. He has the same problems, and he cannot see clearly, because of his own inability to fix his own problems. In what way then, is he qualified to help others? Should not the rafter within our own eye be first removed to clear up our own eyesight? Then once our own eyesight has cleared, we will be able to remove a small impediment from a brother's eye.

[Question] Why then can the man not see clearly, for what has he not addressed?

[Question] Doing what first, will then clear this man's eyesight?

- 2• **Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! Because you traverse sea and dry land to make one proselyte, and when he becomes one, you make him a subject for Gehenna twice as much so as yourselves. (Matthew 23:15)**

[Question] What effort did the Pharisees go to, to make one proselyte, and what then did they make of him?

- 3• **How can you say to your brother; Brother, allow me to extract the straw that is in your eye, while you yourself are not looking at the rafter in that eye of yours? Hypocrite! First extract the rafter from your own eye, and then you will see clearly how to extract the straw that is in your brother's eye. (Luke 6:42)**

[Question] Why is it hypocritical to find fault with others, while we have faults of our own?

- 4• **Therefore you are inexcusable, O man, whoever you are, if you judge. For in the thing in which you judge another, you condemn yourself, inasmuch as, you that judge, practice the same things. (Romans 2:1)**

[Question] Why then, is it inexcusable for us to judge others?

[Question] What do we do to ourselves by judging another, if we practice these same things?

Matthew 7:6•• Do not give what is holy to dogs, neither throw your pearls before swine, that they may never trample them under their feet and turn around and rip you open.

- 1• **Jesus now counsels anointed Christians to not give their pearls of wisdom, to swine or to dogs, who would surely not appreciate spiritual truths. Not seeing the value in them, they would simply trample them under their feet, and then turn around, showing no appreciation for the good things given to them, and rip us apart. People who thus reject fine spiritual counsel are thus like dogs and pigs spiritually.**

[Question] Whom are Christians counseled by Christ not to give their pearls of wisdom to, and why?

[Question] What are such unappreciative people equated with?

- 2• **He that is correcting the ridiculer is taking to himself dishonor, and he that is giving a reproof to someone wicked, a defect in him. (Proverbs 9:7)**

[Question] What does one correcting a ridiculer take to himself?

- 3• The ridiculer does not love the one reproving him. To the wise ones, he will not go. (Proverbs 15:12)**

[Question] How does the ridiculer feel about the person correcting him?

- 4• Wherever anyone does not take you in or listen to your words, on going out of that house or that city shake the dust off your feet. (Matthew 10:14)**

[Question] How were Christians to treat a house or city, that rejected their counsel, upon leaving that place?

- 5• Of how much more severe a punishment, do you think, will the man be counted worthy who has trampled upon the Son of God and who has esteemed as of ordinary value the blood of the covenant by which he was sanctified, and who has outraged the spirit of undeserved kindness with contempt? (Hebrews 10:29)**

[Question] How are people who thus act, treating the value of Christ's sacrifice in their behalf?

- 6• I became speechless with silence. I kept quiet from what is good, and my being pained was ostracized. (Psalms 39:2)**

[Question] How did the Psalmist feel, when among such people?

- 7• Do not reprove a ridiculer, that he may not hate you. Give a reproof to a wise person, and he will love you. (Proverbs 9:8)**

[Question] How does the ridiculer feel about the one giving reproofs, correspondingly how does the wise one react to the same counsel?

- 8• Into the ears of a stupid one do not speak, for he will despise your discreet words. (Proverbs 23:9)**

[Question] What words should we not speak to stupid ones, and why?

- 9• And they continued to keep silent and did not answer him a word, for the commandment of the king was, saying; You must not answer him. (Isaiah 36:21)**

[Question] Why did the men on Jerusalem's wall keep silent, when taunted by the Assyrian?

- 10• And men from the elderly ones of Israel proceeded to come to me and sit down before me. (Ezekiel 14:1)**

[Question] Who came in and sat before Ezekiel, and what was he told about them?

- 11· And as for the prophet, in case he gets fooled and actually speaks a word, I myself, Yehowah, have fooled that prophet, and I will stretch out my hand against him and annihilate him from the midst of my people, Israel. (Ezekiel 14:9)**

[Question] How did Yehowah act, against the false prophets who spoke a word in his name without his sending them?

- 12· But he began by saying to her; First let the children be satisfied, for it is not right to take the bread of the children, and throw it to the little dogs. (Mark 7:27)**

[Question] How did Jesus indicate that his ministry was solely for the nation of Israel?

- 13· Well, in reply to Jesus they said; We do not know. And Jesus said to them; Neither am I telling you by what authority I do these things. (Mark 11:33)**

[Question] How did Jesus deal with men, who questioned his authority?

- 14· The saying of the true proverb has happened to them; The dog has returned to its own vomit, and the sow that was bathed, to rolling in the mire. (2 Peter 2:22)**

[Question] What do those not truly appreciating sacred truths invariably return to, like what animals?

- 15· And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet, and was adorned with gold and precious stone and pearls, and had in her hand, a golden cup that was full of disgusting things, and the unclean things of her fornication. (Revelation 17:4)**

[Question] Though the woman, Babylon the Great is dressed regally, what is in her cup?

- 16· A full stock of gold and silver and precious stone and pearls and fine linen and purple and silk and scarlet, and everything in scented wood and every sort of ivory object and every sort of object out of most precious wood and of copper and of iron and of marble. (Revelation 18:12)**

[Question] What things does she trade in, and what do these things represent? **[See Also Revelation - An Unveiling under this verse]**

- 17· Also, the twelve gates were twelve pearls. Each one of the gates was made of one pearl. And the broad way of the**

city was pure gold, as transparent glass. (**Revelation 21:21**)

[Question] What are the gates to the city of New Jerusalem made of, denoting what that must be possessed by all entering there?

- 18• Outside are the dogs and those who practice spiritism and the fornicators and the murderers and the idolaters, and everyone liking and carrying on a lie. (**Revelation 22:15**)

[Question] Who will be kept outside of this city, and not be allowed to enter into her through her gates?

Matthew 7:7•• Keep on asking, and it will be given you. Keep on seeking, and you will find. Keep on knocking, and it will be opened to you.

- 1• Now regarding spiritual riches, and our needs before our God, we are invited to keep on asking, seeking and knocking toward our God, and he will answer our requests for favor.

[Question] What does Jesus Christ invite mankind to do, if they want spiritual riches from himself and Yehowah God?

- 2• This is why I tell you, all the things you pray and ask for have faith that you have practically received, and you will have them. (**Mark 11:24**)

[Question] How should anointed Christians feel, about anything they might ask for in prayer to accomplish God's will?

- 3• So, if any one of you is lacking in wisdom, let him keep on asking God, for he gives generously to all and without reproaching, and it will be given him. (**James 1:5**)

[Question] How does James counsel anointed Christians to gain wisdom, and from whom?

- 4• And this is the confidence that we have toward him, that, no matter what it is that we ask according to his will, he hears us. (**1 John 5:14**)

[Question] What confidence do anointed Christians have in their God Yehowah?

- 5• Accordingly I say to you, keep on asking, and it will be given you. Keep on seeking, and you will find. Keep on knocking, and it will be opened to you. (**Luke 11:9**)

[Question] What counsel does Jesus give his disciples regarding persistence in prayer?

- 6• But he continued on; Please, here I have taken upon myself to speak to Yehowah. Suppose twenty are found there. In turn he said; I shall not bring it to ruin on account of the twenty. (**Genesis 18:31**)

[Question] How did Abraham display this persistence, when he asked Yehowah God about the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah?

- 7• So it came about at the rolling around of a year that Hannah became pregnant, and brought a son to birth, and proceeded to call his name Samuel, because, said she, it is from Yehowah that I have asked him. (**1 Samuel 1:20**)

[Question] What did Hannah persist in asking God for, and what did she receive?

- 8• It was with reference to this boy that I prayed that Yehowah should grant me my petition, that I asked of him. (**1 Samuel 1:27**)

[Question] What did she later say about her petitions to God?

- 9• At that he said; You have asked a difficult thing. If you see me when taken from you, it will happen to you that way, but if you do not, it will not happen. (**2 Kings 2:10**)

[Question] What request did Elisha make of Elijah, and what was he told?

[Question] How then, would Elisha have to pay close attention to his master every moment, so as not to miss his departure?

- 10• And Jabez began to call upon the God of Israel, saying; If you will without fail bless me and actually enlarge my territory, and your hand really proves to be with me, and you really preserve me from calamity, that it may not hurt me. Accordingly God brought to pass what he had asked. (**1 Chronicles 4:10**)

[Question] What did Jabez ask God for, and how was his prayer answered?

- 11• And you, Solomon my son, know the God of your father and serve him with a complete heart and with a delightful soul. For all hearts Yehowah is searching, and every inclination of the thoughts he is discerning. If you search for him, he will let himself be found by you, but if you leave him, he will cast you off forever. (**1 Chronicles 28:9**)

[Question] What did King David tell Solomon his son, when making him King of Israel?

- 12· Further, he said to Judah to search for Yehowah the God of their forefathers and to do the Law and the commandment. (2 Chronicles 14:4)

[Question] What did Asa tell all of Israel to search for?

- 13· But when in their distress they returned to Yehowah the God of Israel and looked for him, then he let himself be found by them. (2 Chronicles 15:4)

[Question] How did Yehowah God react when his people turned their attention to him in real earnest?

- 14· Therefore we fasted and made request of our God concerning this, so that he let himself be entreated by us. (Ezra 8:23)

[Question] What did the people in Ezra's day do, to get God's attention?

- 15· We will cry out joyfully because of your salvation, and in the name of our God we shall lift our banners. May Yehowah fulfill all your requests. (Psalms 20:5)

[Question] How did the Psalmist feel about having his requests answered by his God?

- 16· One thing I have asked from Yehowah. It is what I shall look for, that I may dwell in the house of Yehowah all the days of my life, to behold the pleasantness of Yehowah and to look with appreciation upon his temple. (Psalms 27:4)

[Question] What was the fondest wish of the Psalmist's heart?

- 17· And you will actually seek me and find me, for you will search for me with all your heart. (Jeremiah 29:13)

[Question] When his people search for Yehowah with all the heart, what will he allow?

- 18· This is what the Sovereign Lord Yehowah has said; This is what I shall yet let myself be searched for by the house of Israel to do for them. I shall multiply them like a flock with men. (Ezekiel 36:37)

[Question] What did Yehowah God show through Ezekiel, that he would do for his people in his New Order?

- 19· If you remain in union with me and my sayings remain in you, ask whatever you wish and it will take place for you. (John 15:7)

[Question] What confidence should all anointed Christians have, if they are in union with Christ?

20• A devout man and one fearing God together with all his household, and he made many gifts of mercy to the people, and made supplication to God continually. (Acts of Apostles 10:2)

[Question] What kind of a man was Cornelius, and was he a man of prayer?

21• But let him keep on asking in faith, not doubting at all, for he who doubts, is like a wave of the sea driven by the wind and blown about. (James 1:6)

[Question] What is a man lacking faith like to God, will he ever accomplish anything?

Matthew 7:8• For everyone asking receives, and everyone seeking finds, and to everyone knocking it will be opened.

1• With Yehowah God, anyone asking receives, and anyone seeking him finds him, and to those drawing close to him, he makes a way for them to do so.

[Question] What confidence do anointed Christians have in Yehowah God, if they search for him with a complete heart?

2• And you will certainly call me and come and pray to me, and I will listen to you. (Jeremiah 29:12)

[Question] What did Yehowah God tell his people through Jeremiah?

3• Also, whatever it is that you ask in my name, I will do this, in order, that the Father may be glorified in connection with the Son. (John 14:13)

[Question] What does Jesus tell his disciples that he will do for them, if they ask in his name from the Father?

4• And whatever we ask we receive from him, because we are observing his commandments, and are doing the things that are pleasing in his eyes. (1 John 3:22)

[Question] Why do anointed Christians receive what they ask God for, for what are they using his gifts for?

5• Search for Yehowah, you people, while he may be found. Call to him while he proves to be near. (Isaiah 55:6)

[Question] What should all men do, while this time of peace from Yehowah God continues?

Matthew 7:9 **Indeed, who is the man among you whom his son asks for bread, he will not hand him a stone, will he?**

1• Jesus then compares Yehowah to a man whose son asks him for a piece of bread. Would such a man give his own son a stone and tell him to eat that. Certainly Yehowah God will likewise give good things to those seeking them from him.

[Question] How does Jesus use a human comparison to show what kinds of things Yehowah God will give to his children who ask him for things?

2• Indeed, which father is there among you who, if his son asks for a fish, will perhaps hand him a serpent instead of a fish? (**Luke 11:11**)

[Question] Would any loving father hand his son something that would hurt him, if he came to him seeking food?

Matthew 7:10 **Or, perhaps, he will ask for a fish, he will not hand him a serpent, will he?**

1• Then he uses another similar example and shows that if his son asked him for a fish, he would not hand him a snake, which might harm him. Thus Yehowah God gives good gifts to his children, and we can depend upon him, if we are doing his will.

[Question] What would a loving father not give his son, if he came to him seeking food to eat?

[Question] What does this show us, about the kinds of gifts, God gives to his children?

Matthew 7:11 **Therefore, if you, although being wicked, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more so will your Father who is in the heavens give good things to those asking him?**

1• Jesus then draws home the point by showing, that if we know how to give good gifts to our children, then how much more so will the righteous God Yehowah give good gifts and blessings to his spiritual children, who come to him in prayer asking for his help. These good gifts come to his spiritual children, through gifts of the spirit.

[Question] How then, does Yehowah God stack up to a human parent by comparison?

[Question] How do these good gifts come forth to his spiritual children from Yehowah God?

- 2• **Therefore, if you, although being wicked, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more so will the Father in heaven give Holy Spirit to those asking him! (Luke 11:13)**

[Question] What can spirit anointed Christians depend upon Yehowah God to give to them?

- 3• **Every good gift and every perfect present is from above, for it comes down from the Father of the celestial lights, and with him there is not a variation of the turning of the shadow. (James 1:17)**

[Question] Where does every good gift and perfect present come from?

[Question] Is Yehowah God consistent in his gifts?

- 4• **So, if any one of you is lacking in wisdom, let him keep on asking God, for he gives generously to all and without reproaching, and it will be given him. (James 1:5)**

[Question] What should anointed Christians ask God for, and what will they certainly receive?

Matthew 7:12• All things, therefore, that you want men to do to you, you also must likewise do to them. This, in fact, is what the Law and the Prophets mean.

- 1• **Jesus then sums up the gist of the Law Covenant and the Prophets in a single sentence. What things you want men to do to you, you must likewise do to them. Or, treat others the way you want to be treated. What a simple concept.**

[Question] How then, does Jesus sum up the gist of the entire Law Covenant?

- 2• **Also, just as you want men to do to you, do the same way to them. (Luke 6:31)**

[Question] How should Christians treat others?

- 3• **Love does not work evil to one's neighbor. Therefore love is the Law's fulfillment. (Romans 13:10)**

[Question] What is the Law's fulfillment, and what does love not do toward others?

- 4• **For the entire Law stands fulfilled in one saying, namely: You must love your neighbor as yourself. (Galatians 5:14)**

[Question] What simple statement, sums up the entire Law Covenant?

- 5• **Really the objective of this mandate is love out of a clean heart and out of a good conscience and out of faith without hypocrisy. (1 Timothy 1:5)**

[Question] What is the objective of all Christian mandates over our thinking and conduct?

- 6• **And in case a man's bull should hurt another's bull and it does die, then they must sell the live bull and divide the price paid for it, and also the dead one they should divide. (Exodus 21:35)**

[Question] How was this principle applied in the case of a man's bull accidentally killing his neighbor's bull?

- 7• **And if your brother is not near you, and you have not got to know him, you must also bring it home into the midst of your house, and it must continue with you until your brother has searched for it. And you must return it to him. (Deuteronomy 22:2)**

[Question] How were Israelites to deal with found property belonging to another?

- 8• **And David's men began to say to him; Here is the day on which Yehowah does say to you, Look! I am giving your enemy into your hand, and you must do to him just as it may seem good in your eyes. So David rose up and quietly cut off the skirt of the sleeveless coat that belonged to Saul. (1 Samuel 24:4)**

[Question] How did David demonstrate his respect for the life of an anointed one?

- 9• **So the king said to Barzillai; You yourself cross over with me, and I shall certainly supply you with food with me in Jerusalem. (2 Samuel 19:33)**

[Question] How did King David respond to the assistance he received from one Barzillai?

- 10• **I myself also could well speak as you men do. If only your souls existed where my soul is, would I be brilliant in words against you, and would I wag my head against you? (Job 16:4)**

[Question] How did Job show, that if the tables were turned, that he would act toward his three troublesome comforters?

- 11• **These ten times you proceeded to rebuke me. You are not**

ashamed that you deal so hard with me. (Job 19:3)

[Question] How did Job chastise his companions for their rebukes, and how did he feel about them?

12· I grew indignant at my people. I profaned my inheritance, and I proceeded to give them into your hand. You showed them no mercies. Upon the old man you made your yoke very heavy. (Isaiah 47:6)

[Question] How did Yehowah God eventually treat his own people for their disobedience?

13· Ought you not, in turn, to have had mercy on your fellow slave, as I also had mercy on you? (Matthew 18:33)

[Question] What did the master of Jesus' parable tell the unrighteous steward, regarding his lack of mercy?

Matthew 7:13· Go in through the narrow gate, because broad and spacious is the road leading off into destruction,¹ and many are the ones going in through it.

Footnote: Or, annihilation Greek, *a-po'lei-an*

1· Jesus now shows that true worship is a narrow and cramped road, yet, one that leads off to life. The popular course is one leading to destruction, and many are on this road or way away from life. It is a broad and spacious road and many people are on it, but it only leads to destruction.

[Question] What is the way of true worship like?

[Question] How does this contrast with the popular course?

[Question] Where does the broad and spacious road, that most are following, lead to?

2· Exert yourselves vigorously to get in through the narrow door, because many, I tell you, will seek to get in, but will not be able. (Luke 13:24)

[Question] How did Jesus counsel his disciples to exert themselves in the truth?

3· Leave the inexperienced ones and keep living, and walk straight in the way of understanding. (Proverbs 9:6)

[Question] Who should not serve as a guide for Christians, and what way should they walk in?

4· The way of the wicked one is something detestable to Yehowah, but the one pursuing righteousness he loves.

(Proverbs 15:9)

[Question] What is the way of the wicked like to Yehowah God?

- 5• And if the righteous man is being saved with difficulty, where will the ungodly man and the sinner make a showing? (1 Peter 4:18)**

[Question] How does even the righteous man fare before Yehowah God, and what then does this teach us?

Matthew 7:14• Whereas narrow is the gate and cramped the road leading off into life, and few are the ones finding it.

- 1• True worship is a narrow way, well defined and we must keep close to it to gain life. Imagine a narrow winding corridor through a mountain pass with dangers at every turn, and each footstep requiring care and attention. That is what the road leading off to life is like. It is not a path of permissiveness and of wide toleration of wrongdoing like we see in the world all around us.**

[Question] What kind of a way is the way of the truth?

[Question] How might we illustrate, what the road to life is like?

[Question] Does the world in general walk on this path to life?

- 2• Strengthening the souls of the disciples, encouraging them to remain in the faith and saying; We must enter into the kingdom of God through many tribulations. (Acts of Apostles 14:22)**

[Question] What did the apostles teach that we must enter into the Kingdom of God through?

- 3• And if the righteous man is being saved with difficulty, where will the ungodly man and the sinner make a showing? (1 Peter 4:18)**

[Question] How is even the righteous man being saved, and what does this bode for the sinner?

- 4• Who is the man that is delighting in life, that is loving enough days to see what is good? (Psalms 34:12)**

[Question] What should life teach us, about what we should follow in it?

- 5• Open to me the gates of righteousness, you people. I shall go into them. I shall laud Yah. (Psalms 118:19)**

[Question] How did the Psalmist show, where he wanted to walk in life?

- 6• The path of life is upward to one acting with insight, in order to turn away from Sheol down below. (**Proverbs 15:24**)

[Question] Where does the path lead, for the one acting with insight?

- 7• Open the gates, you men, that the righteous nation that is **keeping faithful conduct** may enter. (**Isaiah 26:2**)

[Question] Who will the gates of the holy city open for?

- 8• For there are many invited, but **few chosen**. (**Matthew 22:14**)

[Question] How many are invited, and relatively, how many are chosen?

- 9• Now a certain man said to him; Lord, are those who are being saved few? He said to them. (**Luke 13:23**)

[Question] What did a man ask of Jesus, and how did he answer?

- 10• In fact, thus there will be richly supplied to you the entrance into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. (**2 Peter 1:11**)

[Question] What must anointed Christians do to actually enter into the everlasting Kingdom of God?

Matthew 7:15•• **Be on the watch for the false prophets that come to you in sheep's covering, but inside they are ravenous wolves.**

- 1• Jesus now gives fair warning to anointed Christians, that they must be careful as they walk on this path to life. They should be on the watch for false prophets. Such men will come to them dressed as sheep, like other members of the Lord's flock of sheeplike ones. But this is just a covering to get close to you, for inside they are ravenous wolves, and they will not behave as Christians, and will tear the flock apart with their teachings and divisiveness. Be Warned!

[Question] What should anointed Christians remain on the watch for daily?

[Question] How will such men come to them, and what will they be dressed like?

[Question] Yet what are they inside, and how do they demonstrate this before the flock?

- 2• And many false prophets will arise and mislead many. (**Matthew 24:11**)

[Question] What was one of the signs of the Last Days Jesus gave his disciples to watch out for?

- 3• However, there also came to be false prophets among the people, as there will also be false teachers among you. These very ones will quietly bring in destructive sects and will disown even the owner that bought them, bringing speedy destruction upon themselves. (2 Peter 2:1)**

[Question] What did Peter warn anointed Christians, about what would later come forth?

[Question] Who would such ones also disown?

- 4• Beloved ones, do not believe every inspired expression, but test the inspired expressions to see whether they originate with God, because many false prophets have gone forth into the world. (1 John 4:1)**

[Question] How should anointed Christians treat inspired expressions claiming to come forth from God, and why so?

- 5• Woe, whenever all men speak well of you, for things like these are what their forefathers did to the false prophets. (Luke 6:26)**

[Question] Why should men be wary, if all other men speak well of them?

- 6• Her princes in the midst of her are like wolves tearing prey in shedding blood, in destroying souls for the purpose of making unjust gain. (Ezekiel 22:27)**

[Question] What did the princes of the people of Israel become like within her?

- 7• I know that after my going away oppressive wolves will enter in among you, and will not treat the flock with tenderness. (Acts of Apostles 20:29)**

[Question] Whom did Paul warn the Ephesians that would enter in among them in later days, and from where?

- 8• However, the prophet who presumes to speak in my name a word that I have not commanded him to speak, or who speaks in the name of other gods, that prophet must die. (Deuteronomy 18:20)**

[Question] What must happen to the prophet that speaks a word in Yehowah God's name, but whom he did not send?

- 9• At this he said to him; I too am a prophet like you, and an**

angel himself spoke to me by the word of Yehowah, saying; Have him come back with you to your house that he may eat bread and drink water. He deceived him. (**1 Kings 13:18**)

[Question] How have false prophets deceived even true prophets in the past?

- 10• The aged and highly respected one is the head, and the prophet giving false instruction is the tail. (**Isaiah 9:15**)

[Question] How did Isaiah show a reversed situation among the older men of Israel, for who should be the head directing the body?

- 11• And she proceeded to behave rebelliously against my judicial decisions in wickedness more than the nations, and against my statutes more than the lands that are all around her, for my judicial decisions they rejected and, as for my statutes, they did not walk in them. (**Ezekiel 5:6**)

[Question] How did the people of Israel come to act even worse than the surrounding nations?

- 12• But when they are made to stumble they will be helped with a little help. And many will certainly join themselves to them by means of smoothness. (**Daniel 11:34**)

[Question] What would happen to the holy people during the time of the end?

- 13• This is what Yehowah has said against the prophets that are causing my people to wander, that are biting with their teeth and that actually call out, **Peace!** That, when anyone does not put something into their mouths, also actually sanctify war against him. (**Micah 3:5**)

[Question] How did the false prophets treat anyone who would not put something in their mouths?

- 14• Her prophets were insolent, were men of treachery. Her priests themselves profaned what was holy. They did violence to the Law. (**Zephaniah 3:4**)

[Question] What were Israel's prophets and priests like, and how did they treat holy things?

- 15• For false Christs and false prophets will arise, and will give great signs and wonders, so as to mislead, if possible, even the chosen ones. (**Matthew 24:24**)

[Question] What did Jesus Christ state would happen during the time of the end, and to what end?

- 16· For false Christs and false prophets will arise and will give signs and wonders to lead astray, if possible, the chosen ones. (Mark 13:22)**

[Question] What would come forth in the Last Days to attempt to mislead true anointed Christians?

- 17· You, then, watch out! I have told you all things beforehand. (Mark 13:23)**

[Question] Why should true anointed Christians not be fooled, for what information do they all have in hand to see the truth?

- 18· Most truly I say to you, he that does not enter into the sheepfold through the door, but climbs up some other place, that one is a thief and a plunderer. (John 10:1)**

[Question] What is the person who enters into the sheepfold without using the door?

- 19· The thief does not come unless it is to steal and slay and destroy. I have come that they might have life and might have it in abundance. (John 10:10)**

[Question] Why does the thief come into the sheepfold, and how does this contrast with Christ's purpose?

- 20· Now I exhort you, brothers, to keep your eye on those who cause divisions and occasions for stumbling contrary to the teaching that you have learned, and avoid them. (Romans 16:17)**

[Question] Whom should true Christians keep their eyes on within the brotherhood, and how should they treat them?

- 21· Let no one seduce you in any manner, because it will not come unless the apostasy comes first and the man of lawlessness gets revealed, the son of destruction. (2 Thessalonians 2:3)**

[Question] What must come before the presence of Christ, and who must then get revealed through Christ?

- 22· Having a form of godly devotion, but proving false to its power, and from these turn away. (2 Timothy 3:5)**

[Question] What kind of a faith did the apostle Paul state many people would have in the Last Days?

- 23· For many deceivers have gone forth into the world, persons not confessing Jesus Christ as coming in the flesh. This is the deceiver and the antichrist. (2 John 1:7)**

[Question] How does the apostle John identify the antichrist?

Matthew 7:16 **By their fruits you will recognize them. Never do people gather grapes from thorns, or figs from thistles, do they?**

1• Jesus then uses a simple illustration, to show how to recognize such men. The fruits we see on a tree tell us what kind of tree we are looking at, whether apples, cherries, peaches or figs. Thus men who are true anointed Christians produce fine fruits, and this is how we can recognize them, by their fine fruits.

[Question] How does Jesus use a simple illustration to show how to identify false prophets and false Christs?

[Question] What then, must all true Christians produce in the way of spiritual qualities?

2• Also Jesus shows that people never reap fruits from non-productive weeds like thorns or thistles. Thus men who are spiritually like thorns and thistles, we should not expect to get any fine fruit from them. Never does anyone gather grapes or figs from such fruitless plants.

[Question] What also do people never reap fruits from?

[Question] Should we then expect to reap any fine fruitage from men like thorns and thistles?

3• Even by his practices a boy makes himself recognized as to whether his activity is pure and upright. (**Proverbs 20:11**)

[Question] What does even a boy show about himself early on?

4• Now I exhort you, brothers, to keep your eye on those who cause divisions and occasions for stumbling, contrary to the teaching that you have learned, and avoid them. (**Romans 16:17**)

[Question] Who were true anointed Christians within the congregation of God to keep their eyes upon, and how should they treat unruly ones?

5• Now the works of the flesh are manifest, and they are fornication, uncleanness, loose conduct, idolatry, practice of spiritism, enmities, strife, jealousy, fits of anger, contentions, divisions, sects, envies, drunken bouts, revelries, and things like these. As to these things I am forewarning you, the same way as I did forewarn you, that those who practice such things will not inherit God's kingdom. (**Galatians 5:19-21**)

[Question] What are the works of the flesh, and will anyone practicing these things enter into the Kingdom of the heavens?

- 6• **And God went on to say; Let the earth cause grass to shoot forth, vegetation bearing seed, fruit trees yielding fruit according to their kinds, the seed of which is in it, upon the earth. And it came to be so. (Genesis 1:11)**

[Question] How do all things living reproduce here on earth?

[Question] Then, can a false organization produce true anointed Christians?

- 7• **For each tree is known by its own fruit. For example, people do not gather figs from thorns, nor do they cut grapes off a thornbush. (Luke 6:44)**

[Question] How do people identify trees by type of what?

- 8• **My brothers, a fig tree cannot produce olives or a vine figs, can it? Neither can salt water produce sweet water. (James 3:12)**

[Question] What can a fig tree not produce?

[Question] What can a vine not produce?

[Question] Can sweet water come from the ocean?

- 9• **And Israel's Light must become a fire, and his Holy One a flame, and it must blaze up and eat up his weeds and his thornbushes in one day. (Isaiah 10:17)**

[Question] What will Israel's light become, to those who are like thornbushes and weeds?

- 10•• **For there is not a fine tree producing rotten fruit, again there is not a rotten tree producing fine fruit. (Luke 6:43)**

[Question] Can a fine tree produce or retain rotten fruit?

[Question] Can a rotten tree produce any fine fruit?

- 11• **They publicly declare they know God, but they disown him by their works, because they are detestable and disobedient and not approved for good work of any sort. (Titus 1:16)**

[Question] What do most false Christians say about their faith, yet what are their works?

[Question] Do most people professing to be Christians, actually know and follow closely Bible teachings in every aspect of their lives?

Matthew 7:17· **Likewise every good tree produces fine fruit, but every rotten tree produces worthless fruit.**

1· Jesus now carries the illustration further, showing that good trees produce only good fruit, and bad trees produce only bad fruit. Thus when we find good fruit within a man, we will then find many good works within him. Likewise people doing bad things may also have many hidden bad things within them.

[Question] What then only, does a good tree produce?

[Question] What then only, does a rotten tree produce?

[Question] How can we apply this clean to men individually?

[Question] How can we apply it to religious organizations?

2· Either you people make the tree fine and its fruit fine, or make the tree rotten and its fruit rotten, for by its fruit the tree is known. (Matthew 12:33)

[Question] What then Last Days both men and organizations produce all of none of?

3· For there is not a fine tree producing rotten fruit, again there is not a rotten tree producing fine fruit. (Luke 6:43)

[Question] Is there any such thing as a rotten tree producing fine fruit or even the opposite?

4· Just as the proverb of the ancients says: From the wicked ones wickedness will go forth, but my own hand will not come to be upon you. (1 Samuel 24:13)

[Question] What does the Proverb say, about what will go forth from the wicked ones?

5· Make my eyes pass on from seeing what is worthless. Preserve me alive in your own way. (Psalms 119:37)

[Question] What did the Psalmist ask God to make pass by him, and what way did he want to walk in?

6· The activity of the righteous one results in life, the produce of the wicked one results in sin. (Proverbs 10:16)

[Question] What does the activity of the righteous one result in?

[Question] What does the activity of the wicked one result in?

7· Even by his practices a boy makes himself recognized as to whether his activity is pure and upright. (Proverbs 20:11)

[Question] What patterns does even a young man demonstrate about his future, early on?

- 8• To assign to those mourning over Zion, to give them a headdress instead of ashes, the oil of exultation instead of mourning, the mantle of praise instead of the downhearted spirit. They must be called big trees of righteousness, the planting of Yehowah, for him to be beautified. (**Isaiah 61:3**)

[Question] What is a part of the Messiah's commission toward men?

Matthew 7:18•• A good tree cannot bear worthless fruit, neither can a rotten tree produce fine fruit.

- 1• Just as any farmer knows, a good tree cannot bear worthless fruit, neither will we find good fruit on a rotten tree.

[Question] What can a good tree not bear, and what will a rotten tree never produce?

Matthew 7:19•• Every tree not producing fine fruit gets cut down and thrown into the fire.

- 1• As the great cultivator of mankind, Yehowah God wants his people to produce fine spiritual fruit, else why should he let them live on his earth, the greater orchard. Therefore every tree that produces nothing good, gets cut down and thrown into the fire. People may not like this assessment by God, but good fruitage is expected of them, and anyone not producing such, gets destroyed.

[Question] What does Yehowah God the great cultivator of mankind want for his people to produce?

[Question] What are people like to him, who produce no fine fruits, within his orchard?

- 2• Already the ax is lying at the root of the trees. Every tree, then, that does not produce fine fruit, is to be cut down and thrown into the fire. (**Matthew 3:10**)

[Question] What did John the Baptist state, about where the Jews stood in relation to their God, and so what would be the result for them as a people?

- 3• And if then it produces fruit in the future, well and good, but if not, you shall cut it down. (**Luke 13:9**)

[Question] What did the vineyard owner demand of the gardener, yet what did the gardener recommend be done?

- 4• Every branch in me not bearing fruit he takes away, and every

**one bearing fruit he cleans, that it may bear more fruit.
(John 15:2)**

[Question] In a vine, what must be done to unproductive tendrils for the vine to produce more fruit?

**5• But let our people also learn to maintain fine works so as to meet their pressing needs, that they may not be unfruitful.
(Titus 3:14)**

[Question] What counsel did Paul give to Titus?

6• Indeed, the ax is already in position at the root of the trees. Every tree, therefore, not producing fine fruit is to be cut down and thrown into the fire. (Luke 3:9)

[Question] What was the situation of the Jews as a people in the **First Century C.E?**

[Question] What was to happen soon to their nation, if they did not produce fine fruits spiritually?

Matthew 7:20• Really, then, by their fruits you will recognize those men.

1• So to reiterate an earlier point, he shows, that it is by their fine fruits, that anointed Christians can recognize these different types of men.

[Question] How then, can true Christians recognize fine people?

2• Either you people make the tree fine and its fruit fine, or make the tree rotten and its fruit rotten. For by its fruit the tree is known. (Matthew 12:33)

[Question] What two choices are before every man, and every organization, regarding their service to God?

[Question] How then, will these men and organizations to be recognized?

3• At this Judah exclaimed; What can we say to my master? What can we speak? And how can we prove ourselves righteous? The true God has found out the error of your slaves. Here we are slaves to my master, both we and the one in whose hand the cup was found! (Genesis 44:16)

[Question] How did Joseph's brothers come to realize, that they had been found out?

Matthew 7:21 **Not everyone saying to me; Lord, Lord, will enter into the kingdom of the heavens, but the one doing the will of my Father who is in the heavens will.**

1• Next Jesus Christ showed that not all men who called him Lord, therefore not all Christians, are going to enter into the Kingdom of the heavens, but only those, who do the will of Yehowah God. There is no getting around this, for Yehowah God knows everyone who serves him acceptably. As shown above, that will is for them to have fine works and to preach about his coming Kingdom.

[Question] Who alone would come to Jesus and call him Lord?

[Question] Will all such ones then, enter into the Kingdom of the heavens?

[Question] What must anyone wanting to gain entrance into the Kingdom of God have to gain access to it?

2• In answer this one said; I will, sir, but did not go out. (Matthew 21:29)

[Question] How did Jesus illustrate how some would say that they were Christians, but would not do the will of God?

3• For the hearers of Law are not the ones righteous before God, but the doers of Law will be declared righteous. (Romans 2:13)

[Question] Were the hearers of the Law Covenant declared righteous, who was?

4• However, become doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving yourselves with false reasoning. (James 1:22)

[Question] What did James show that men who hear the word, but do not practice it, are doing to themselves?

5• For this is what the love of God means, that we observe his commandments, and yet his commandments are not burdensome. (1 John 5:3)

[Question] What does the love of God mean?

6• Furthermore, the world is passing away and so is its desire, but he that does the will of God remains forever. (1 John 2:17)

[Question] What is passing away, but what remains forever?

7• For the word is very near you, in your own mouth and in your own heart, **that you may do it. (Deuteronomy 30:14)**

[Question] What word is near to anointed Christians, and what must they do within it?

- 8• As for the four, each one had four faces and each one had four wings, and the likeness of the hands of earthling man was under their wings. (**Ezekiel 10:21**)

[Question] Whose will were the cherubs always ready to perform?

- 9• And they will come in to you, like the coming in of people, and sit before you as my people, and they will certainly hear your words, but these they will not do, for with their mouth they are expressing lustful desires, and after their unjust gain is where their heart is going. (**Ezekiel 33:31**)

[Question] What were men doing as respects Ezekiel, the Son of Man, but what were they not willing to do after hearing his words?

- 10• Why, then, do you call me; Lord! Lord! But do not do the things I say? (**Luke 6:46**)

[Question] What did Jesus remark was pointless?

- 11• But he said; No, rather, happy are those hearing the word of God **and keeping it!** (**Luke 11:28**)

[Question] Whom did Jesus show would be happy?

- 12• Thus, too, faith, **if it does not have works, is dead in itself.** (**James 2:17**)

[Question] What is faith, if it does not have works?

Matthew 7:22• Many will say to me in that day; Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in your name, and expel demons in your name, and perform many powerful works¹ in your name?

Footnote: Or, many miracles

- 1• When the time of judgment comes, then many would come forth claiming to be disciples of their Lord, Jesus Christ. They will show that they prophesied in his name, and expelled demons, and performed other powerful works in his name.

[Question] What will many false Christians state, when the time for judgment of them comes?

- 2• Why, then, do you call me; Lord! Lord! But do not do the things I say? (**Luke 6:46**)

[Question] What did Jesus say, that many would listen to, but not perform?

- 3• And Yehowah went on to say to me; Falsehood is what the prophets are prophesying in my name. I have not sent them, nor have I commanded them or spoken to them. A false vision, and divination, and a valueless thing, and the trickiness of their heart, they are speaking prophetically to you people. (**Jeremiah 14:14**)

[Question] What did many within Israel claim to be, but had Yehowah God sent them forth?

- 4• For I have not sent them, is the utterance of Yehowah, but they are prophesying in my name falsely, to the end that I shall disperse you, and you will have to perish, you men, and the prophets that are prophesying to you. (**Jeremiah 27:15**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God foretell would become, of all such false prophets, who spoke in his name?

[Question] Does this apply to Christianity also?

- 5• And the sign or the portent does come true of which he spoke to you, saying; Let us walk after other gods, whom you have not known, and let us serve them. (**Deuteronomy 13:2**)

[Question] What should men never follow after?

- 6• There exists a way that is upright before a man, but the ways of death are the end of it afterward. (**Proverbs 16:25**)

[Question] How do men feel about their lives generally, but what does their self-righteous attitude result in?

- 7• For false Christs and false prophets will arise and will give great signs and wonders so as to mislead, if possible, even the chosen ones. (**Matthew 24:24**)

[Question] What did Jesus state would come forth during the Last Days, and who would they try to mislead?

- 8• Then you will start saying; We ate and drank in front of you, and you taught in our broad ways. (**Luke 13:26**)

[Question] What would many professed Christians claim on judgment day?

- 9• For I bear them witness that they have a zeal for God, but not according to accurate knowledge. (**Romans 10:2**)

[Question] What do many people possess, but what is lacking about their faith?

- 10^{••} And if I have the gift of prophesying and am acquainted with all the sacred secrets and all knowledge, and if I have all the faith so as to transplant mountains, but do not have love, I am nothing. (1 Corinthians 13:2)**

[Question] What would all the precious gifts of the Holy Spirit be like, without love?

- 11[•] True, some are preaching the Christ through envy and rivalry, but others also through goodwill. (Philippians 1:15)**

[Question] How was the Christ preached in the **First Century C.E?**

- 12[•] Having a form of godly devotion, but proving false to its power, and from these turn away. (2 Timothy 3:5)**

[Question] What did Paul state, that many people's religion would be like in the Last Days?

- 13[•] Little children, let us love, neither in word nor with the tongue, but in deed and truth. (1 John 3:18)**

[Question] How should true Christians love?

Matthew 7:23^{••} And yet then I will confess to them; I never knew you! Get away from me, you workers of lawlessness.

1[•] Yet then Jesus Christ will confess to many of such ones, that he never came to know them. He will chase them away, for they are really workers of lawlessness, for they have not come to know Jesus Christ or his father, Yehowah God, accurately, nor have they practiced the truth closely. They are workers of lawlessness, when measured by the standards of true worship, clearly published within the Bible record.

[Question] What then, does Jesus Christ state that he will then tell them?

[Question] What then, are people who claim to serve Yehowah God, but without accurate knowledge of his will and purpose, and how do God and Christ view them?

- 2[•] When once the householder has got up and locked the door, and you start to stand outside and to knock at the door, saying; Sir, open to us. But in answer he will say to you; I do not know where you are from. (Luke 13:25)**

[Question] Once the judgment is made, about who will be saved, what will the pleadings of those left out, fall upon?

- 3[•] Get away from me, all you practicers of what is hurtful, for**

**Yehowah will certainly hear the sound of my weeping.
(Psalms 6:8)**

[Question] How did the Messiah prophetically speak of those who did not practice the truth?

- 4• But he will speak and say to you; I do not know where you are from. Get away from me, all you workers of unrighteousness! (Luke 13:27)**

[Question] In Jesus' illustration, how were the workers of unrighteousness turned away?

- 5• Everyone who practices sin is also practicing lawlessness, and so sin is lawlessness. (1 John 3:4)**

[Question] What is sin, and what are people who practice sin?

- 6• You have loved righteousness and you hate wickedness. That is why God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of exultation more than your partners. (Psalms 45:7)**

[Question] Why did Yehowah God anoint his Son with the Holy Spirit more than his partners, his other anointed Christian sons?

- 7• But to the wicked one God will have to say; What right do you have to enumerate my regulations, and that you may bear my covenant in your mouth? (Psalms 50:16)**

[Question] How does Yehowah God feel, about people who speak the Bible's truth, but do not practice them?

- 8• A crooked heart departs from me. Nothing bad do I know. (Psalms 101:4)**

[Question] What did the Psalmist put far away from him?

- 9• Get away from me, you evildoers, that I may observe the commandments of my God. (Psalms 119:115)**

[Question] How did the Psalmist feel about being around evildoers?

- 10• And because of the increasing of lawlessness the love of the greater number will cool off. (Matthew 24:12)**

[Question] What sign did Jesus point to, as something that would make people's love for one another and for God, cool off in the Last Days?

- 11• Then he will say, in turn, to those on his left; Be on your way from me, you who have been cursed, into the everlasting fire prepared for the Devil and his angels. (Matthew 25:41)**

[Question] Where will all those who are rejected by the Christ for not helping his spirit anointed brothers, end up?

- 12• Well, the tongue is a fire. The tongue is constituted a world of unrighteousness among our members, for it spots up all the body, and sets the wheel of natural life aflame, and it is set aflame by Gehenna. (**James 3:6**)

[Question] What did James call the human tongue?

[Question] What does it constitute man, all our other body members, and why?

- 13• For many deceivers have gone forth into the world, persons not confessing Jesus Christ as coming in the flesh. This is the deceiver and the antichrist. (**2 John 1:7**)

[Question] Who had gone forth into the world, and what do they not confess about Jesus Christ?

[Question] What is anyone who does not confess, that Jesus Christ came forth in the flesh?

- 14• And a strong angel lifted up a stone like a great millstone and hurled it into the sea, saying; Thus with a swift pitch will Babylon the great city be hurled down, and she will never be found again. (**Revelation 18:21**)

[Question] How did the angel illustrate, how Babylon the Great would be thrown down?

Matthew 7:24• Therefore everyone that hears these sayings of mine and does them, will be likened to a discreet man, who built his house upon the rock-mass.

- 1• Therefore since many would profess to be Christians, but would not actually do the will of Yehowah God, and the work of Christianity, he now shows by an illustration, how important it is to actually practice true Christianity. He likens a man who hears his words, and then puts them into practice, to a man who builds a well-founded house on a strong foundation firmly seated upon a rock mass.

[Question] What illustration did Jesus now give to illustrate how true anointed Christians would fare in relation to false ones?

[Question] What is a man like who hears his words, and then puts them into practice?

- 2• Everyone that comes to me and hears my words and does them, I will show you whom he is like. (**Luke 6:47**)

[Question] What did Jesus say what a man who heard his words and put them into practice, was like?

- 3• He is like a man building a house, who dug and went down deep and laid a foundation upon the rock-mass. Consequently, when a flood arose, the river dashed against that house, but was not strong enough to shake it, because of its being well built. (Luke 6:48)**

[Question] In Jesus' illustration who is the rock mass, and what is the house built upon it?

[Question] How did such a house fare, when the river flooded?

- 4• He is like a man building a house, who dug and went down deep and laid a foundation upon the rock-mass. Consequently, when a flood arose, the river dashed against that house, but was not strong enough to shake it, because of its being well built. (Luke 6:48)**

[Question] What does the flooding of the river picture, in our lives?

- 5• As when the storm wind passes over, so the wicked one is no more, but the righteous one is a foundation to time indefinite. (Proverbs 10:25)**

[Question] How do the righteous and the wicked, fare differently through adversities?

- 6• There is an overthrowing of the wicked ones, and they are no more, but the very house of the righteous ones will keep standing. (Proverbs 12:7)**

[Question] What will surely happen to the wicked ones, and to the righteous ones?

- 7• Anyone shunning discipline is rejecting his own soul, but the one listening to reproof is acquiring heart. (Proverbs 15:32)**

[Question] What is the one listening to discipline acquiring for himself?

- 8• A lying witness will perish, but the man that is listening will speak even forever. (Proverbs 21:28)**

[Question] What will surely happen to a lying witness?

- 9• Five of them were foolish, and five were discreet. (Matthew 25:2)**

[Question] How did Jesus illustrate, how those claiming to be his disciples during his presence, would be divided, and fare differently?

- 10^{••} The discreet answered with the words; Perhaps there may not be quite enough for us and you. Be on your way, instead, to those who sell it, and buy for yourselves. (Matthew 25:9)

[Question] What did the five discreet virgins, tell the five indiscreet ones?

- 11[•] Teaching them to observe all the things I have commanded you. And, look! I am with you all the days until the conclusion of the system of things. (Matthew 28:20)

[Question] What were Jesus disciples commanded to teach to future generations of Christians?

- 12[•] If you know these things, happy you are if you do them. (John 13:17)

[Question] Who would be declared happy, those hearing the word, or those doing it?

- 13[•] Rooted and being built up in him and being stabilized in the faith, just as you were taught, overflowing with faith in thanksgiving. (Colossians 2:7)

[Question] Who are anointed Christians rooted in, and what foundation are they built upon?

- 14[•] Who is wise and understanding among you? Let him, show out of his fine conduct, his works, with a mildness that belongs to wisdom. (James 3:13)

[Question] How can anointed Christians show, that they are wise and understanding?

Matthew 7:25^{••} And the rain poured down and the floods came and the winds blew and lashed against that house, but it did not cave in, for it had been founded upon the rock-mass.

- 1[•] Jesus then shows by illustration that when adversity comes, whether through persecution, suffering or tribulation, that such a well founded individual will fare well, remaining upon his strong and firm foundation, and his house will not cave in, for it has a strong foundation upon the rock mass.

[Question] How then, did Jesus show that his true disciples would fare under tribulation or adversity, and why?

- 2[•] He is like a man building a house, who dug and went down deep and laid a foundation upon the rock-mass. Consequently, when a flood arose, the river dashed

against that house, but was not strong enough to shake it, because of its being well built. (**Luke 6:48**)

[Question] What force of tribulation and adversity, were those founded upon the rock mass, able to endure successfully?

- 3• If anyone's work that he has built on it remains, he will receive a reward. (**1 Corinthians 3:14**)

[Question] What would anyone working in the truth receive in return, if his own work remains?

[Question] How then, should we build, to ensure that our works in Christ remain?

- 4• After this I saw four angels standing upon the four corners of the earth, holding tight the four winds of the earth, that no wind might blow upon the earth or upon the sea or upon any tree. (**Revelation 7:1**)

[Question] What will be held back until Yehowah God's judgment begins, and why is that day being held back now?

Matthew 7:26•• Furthermore, everyone hearing these sayings of mine and not doing them, will be likened to a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand.

- 1• Next Jesus shows the converse situation, that of a man who hears his word, but does not do it. Him he likens to a foolish man, who built a house without a foundation, one just sitting upon the sand.

[Question] What further situation does Jesus now illustrate?

[Question] What is the foolish man likened to, and why?

- 2• On the other hand, he who hears and does not do, is like a man who built a house upon the ground without a foundation. Against it the river dashed, and immediately it collapsed, and the ruin of that house became great. (**Luke 6:49**)

[Question] What is the man who hears Jesus' teachings, and then does not put them into practice, likened to?

- 3• For if anyone is a hearer of the word, and not a doer, this one is like a man looking at his natural face in a mirror. (**James 1:23**)

[Question] How does James illustrate, what a man who hears, but does not perform, is like?

- 4• The wise ones have become ashamed. They have become terrified and will be caught. Look! They have rejected the very word of Yehowah, and what wisdom do they have? (**Jeremiah 8:9**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God show, that those who are seemingly wise men religiously, were going to feel, when he exposed them?

- 5• Five of them were foolish, and five were discreet. (**Matthew 25:2**)

[Question] What divides the ten virgins into two classes?

Matthew 7:27•• And the rain poured down and the floods came and the winds blew and struck against that house, and it caved in, and its collapse was great.

- 1• Again the storm passed by his house and it collapsed, because of not being well founded, or built on a strong foundation. Thus it goes with the man who hears the word of the preaching of the Good News of God's Kingdom, but who does not put it into practice.

[Question] What happens to this man's life when the flood comes, for what has he not done after hearing the word?

- 2• Therefore this is what the Sovereign Lord Yehowah has said; I will also cause a blast of windstorms to burst forth in my rage, and in my anger there will occur a flooding downpour, and in rage there will be hailstones for an extermination. (**Ezekiel 13:13**)

[Question] What did Yehowah God state, that he would bring against his own people for their wickedness?

- 3• Each one's work will become manifest, for the day will show it up, because it will be revealed by means of fire. The fire itself will prove what sort of work each one's is. (**1 Corinthians 3:13**)

[Question] How will each one's work become manifest, and how will each one's work be tested?

- 4• On the other hand, he who hears and does not do, is like a man who built a house upon the ground without a foundation. Against it the river dashed, and immediately it collapsed, and the ruin of that house became great. (**Luke 6:49**)

[Question] What is a man who hears, but does not do, likened to, and what happens to his house or faith, when tested?

- 5• **An east wind will carry him off and he will go away, and it will whirl him away from his place. (Job 27:21)**

[Question] What did Job show would happen to the wicked ones?

- 6• **And I will tear down the wall that you men have plastered with whitewash and bring it into contact with the earth, and its foundation must be exposed. And she will certainly fall, and you must come to an end in the midst of her, and you will have to know that I am Yehowah. (Ezekiel 13:14)**

[Question] How did Yehowah God state, that he would break down the wall of untruth, that this people had raised up before him?

Matthew 7:28• Now when Jesus finished these sayings, the effect was that the crowds were astounded at his way of teaching.

- 1• Now when people had heard all of Jesus' sayings, they marveled and were astounded at his way of teaching. It was far different than the way that their religious leaders had taught them in the past. It is also far different than what religious leaders teach presently, and also far different than how people today live who profess to be Christians.

[Question] How did the people hearing this discourse feel when he finished speaking?

- 2• **And they became astounded at his way of teaching, for there he was teaching them as one having authority, and not as the scribes. (Mark 1:22)**

[Question] How did Jesus Christ teach, and how did this differ from what they were accustomed to?

- 3• **And they were astounded at his way of teaching, because his speech was with authority. (Luke 4:32)**

[Question] How did the crowds feel upon hearing the teachings of Jesus Christ?

- 4• **For there has been a child born to us, there has been a son given to us. The princely rule will come to be upon his shoulder. His name will be called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, Eternal Father, Prince of Peace. (Isaiah 9:6)**

[Question] What had Isaiah prophesied about, to come to the Israelite people?

[Question] How did Jesus Christ himself become a Wonderful Counselor thus fulfilling Isaiah's prophecy?

- 5• **And the heat-parched ground will have become as a reedy pool, and the thirsty ground as springs of water. In the abiding place of jackals, a resting-place for them, there will be green grass with reeds and papyrus plants. (Isaiah 35:7)**

[Question] How did Isaiah show, how the spiritual landscape of his people Israel would change?

- 6• **On hearing that, the crowds were astounded at his teaching. (Matthew 22:33)**

[Question] How did the crowds feel upon hearing Jesus Christ speak?

- 7• **But all those listening to him were in constant amazement at his understanding and his answers. (Luke 2:47)**

[Question] How did those listening to him feel, even as a young man?

Matthew 7:29•• For he was teaching them as a person having authority, and not as their scribes.

- 1• **When Jesus taught, he taught as one having authority, and not as their scribes, who generally quoted so and so, as an earlier authority. Jesus' instruction was original, and by the use of illustrations and parables taken from everyday life, he taught them new and vibrant things, in a way, that they had never heard them before.**

[Question] How did Jesus' teachings differ from that of their scribes?

[Question] What then, did he teach through illustrations and parables?

- 2• **The officers replied; Never has another man spoken like this. (John 7:46)**

[Question] What did people, even opposers have to say about the way he spoke?

- 3• **And they became astounded at his way of teaching, for there he was teaching them as one having authority, and not as the scribes. (Mark 1:22)**

[Question] How did Jesus teach, and how was this different from their past instruction under the Law Covenant?

- 4• **This one came to him in the night and said to him; Rabbi, we know that you as a teacher have come from God, for no one can perform these signs that you perform, unless God**

is with him. (John 3:2)

[Question] What did Nicodemus rightly reason concerning Jesus, and where his teachings came forth from?